

**AXS Merger Fund**

Investor Class Shares: (GAKAX)

Class I Shares: (GAKIX)

*A series of Investment Managers Series Trust II (the "Trust")*

**Supplement dated November 18, 2024 to the currently effective  
Prospectus, Summary Prospectus and Statement of Additional Information ("SAI").**

The Board of Trustees of the Trust has approved a Plan of Liquidation for the AXS Merger Fund (the "Fund"). The Plan of Liquidation authorizes the termination, liquidation and dissolution of the Fund. In order to perform such liquidation, effective immediately, the Fund is closed to all new investment.

The Fund will be liquidated on or about December 27, 2024 (the "Liquidation Date"), and shareholders may redeem their shares until the Liquidation Date. Redemptions made on or after the date of this Supplement will not be subject to any redemption fee that would otherwise be applicable. On or promptly after the Liquidation Date, the Fund will make a liquidating distribution to its remaining shareholders equal to each shareholder's proportionate interest in the net assets of the Fund, in complete redemption and cancellation of the Fund's shares held by the shareholder, and the Fund will be dissolved. Any liquidation proceeds paid to a shareholder should generally be treated as received in exchange for shares and will therefore generally give rise to a capital gain or loss depending on the shareholder's tax basis. Shareholders (including but not limited to shareholders holding shares through tax-deferred accounts) should contact their tax advisers to discuss the income tax consequences of the liquidation. Under certain circumstances, liquidation proceeds may be subject to withholding taxes.

In anticipation of the liquidation of the Fund, Kellner Management, L.P., the Fund's sub-advisor, may manage the Fund in a manner intended to facilitate its orderly liquidation, such as by raising cash or making investments in other highly liquid assets. As a result, during this time, all or a portion of the Fund may not be invested in a manner consistent with its stated investment strategies, which may prevent the Fund from achieving its investment objective.

Please contact the Fund at 1-833-AXS-ALTS (1-833-297-2587) if you have any questions or need assistance.

*Please file this Supplement with your records.*

**AXS Market Neutral Fund**  
Investor Class Shares: COGMX  
Class I Shares: COGIX

*A series of Investment Managers Series Trust II (the "Trust")*

**Supplement dated October 16, 2024, to the  
Prospectus and Statement of Additional Information,  
each dated January 31, 2024.**

**IMPORTANT NOTICE REGARDING PLANNED CHANGES IN FUND MANAGEMENT  
AND PRINCIPAL INVESTMENT STRATEGIES**

*Effective immediately, Quantitative Value Technologies, LLC d/b/a Cognios Capital ("Cognios Capital") will no longer serve as the AXS Market Neutral Fund's (the "Fund") sub-advisor, and AXS Investments LLC ("AXS"), the Fund's investment advisor, will assume the day-to-day management of the Fund's portfolio. Parker Binion, Chief of Compliance and Head of Investments of AXS, and Steven Vannelli, Portfolio Manager of AXS, will serve as portfolio managers of the Fund. In addition, effective on or about December 16, 2024, certain changes to the Fund's principal investment strategies will be implemented. Accordingly, the Prospectus and SAI are updated as follows:*

**Effective Immediately:**

1. *All references to Cognios Capital in the Prospectus and SAI are deleted.*
2. *The "Principal Investment Strategies" sections of the Prospectus are deleted in their entirety and replaced with the following:*

The Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by balancing "long" and "short" positions. To do this, the Fund will buy (take long positions in) equity securities of U.S. companies that the Fund's advisor, AXS Investments LLC (the "Advisor") believes are undervalued and more likely to appreciate and, at the same time, borrow and then sell (take short positions in) equity securities of U.S. companies that the Advisor believes are likely to underperform the long positions over time. The Fund generally seeks to purchase and sell short common stock of companies that are constituents of the S&P 500® Index. The Fund may invest across different industries and sectors. The Fund may also invest in the securities of issuers of any size.

When the Fund takes a long position, it purchases a stock outright. The Fund increases in value when the market price of the stock exceeds the cost per share to acquire the stock. In addition, the Fund will earn dividend income when dividends are paid on stocks owned by the Fund. When the Fund takes a short position, it sells at the current market price a stock it does not own but has borrowed in anticipation that the market price of the stock will decline or underperform the positions in the long portfolio. To complete, or close out, the short sale transaction, the Fund buys the same stock in the market at a later date and returns it to the lender. The Fund will make money if the market price of the borrowed stock goes down further than the borrowing costs, including dividend expenses when stocks held short pay dividends, and the Fund is able to replace the borrowed stock. While it is not guaranteed, the Advisor expects that dividend income will exceed dividend expense on an annual basis. Alternatively, if the price of the stock goes up after the short sale and before the short position is closed, the Fund will lose money on that position because it will have to pay more to replace the borrowed stock than the Fund received when the Fund sold the stock short.

Under normal circumstances, the Fund intends to generally remain "market neutral" on a "Beta-adjusted basis." As used here, Beta is a statistical measure of the sensitivity of a company's stock price to the movement of a broad stock market index. For the Fund, the Advisor considers a company's stock price Beta relative to the S&P 500® Index. A Beta of 1.0 means a stock generally moves up and down in

proportion to the movement of the stock market. A Beta greater than 1.0 means a stock generally moves up and down more than the movement of the stock market. A Beta less than 1.0 means that a stock generally moves up and down less than the movement of the stock market. “Beta-adjusted market neutral” means that the Advisor will attempt to offset 100% of the Fund’s long exposure to the Beta of the broad stock market (i.e., the up and down movements of the S&P 500® Index) by sizing the short positions based on the relative Betas of the long positions compared to the short positions. For example, when the Betas of the short positions are higher than the Betas of the long positions, fewer dollars of short positions are needed to offset the Betas of the long portfolio. In this case, the Fund will be “net long” on a dollar basis (i.e., more dollars invested in the long positions than in the short positions), but will still be “market neutral” on a Beta-adjusted basis. A “Beta-adjusted market neutral” strategy typically seeks to derive total returns strictly from stock picking Alpha, with none of the return over time coming from the general up and down movement of the broader stock market (described further below). Over time, since the Fund is Beta-adjusted market neutral, the Fund’s total return is expected to be largely independent of the positive or negative total returns of the broad stock market.

An actively managed stock portfolio’s gross investment return is generally driven by three factors: (i) the overall stock market’s return (i.e., in the Fund’s case, the overall stock market’s return is measured using the S&P 500® Total Return Index, the Fund’s benchmark); (ii) the sensitivity of the portfolio to changes in prices in the overall stock market (i.e., the portfolio’s Beta relative to the stock market); and (iii) the Advisor’s ability to do better or worse than what would be predicted by multiplying the market’s return by the portfolio’s Beta (i.e., (i) times (ii) above). This last component (iii) is called Alpha and is the risk-adjusted (i.e., Beta-adjusted) outperformance or underperformance of the portfolio relative to the stock market. Since the Fund has generally attempted to hedge all of the overall market’s returns on a Beta-adjusted basis through its short positions, all of the Fund’s net return is expected to be solely the Alpha generated by the Advisor, less all of the Fund’s fees and expenses. Positive Alpha can be generated if the stocks selected for the long portfolio exceed the performance of the S&P 500® Total Return Index and/or if the stocks selected for the short portfolio underperform the S&P 500® Total Return Index, less all of the Fund’s fees and expenses.

By employing this long/short Beta-adjusted market neutral investment strategy, the Fund seeks to limit its volatility relative to movements in the overall stock market and limit downside risk during market declines. The Fund may achieve a gain if the securities in its long portfolio outperform the securities in its short portfolio, each taken as a whole, even if the short positions generate a loss, as long as the loss in the short portfolio does not exceed the gain in the long portfolio. Conversely, the Fund may incur a loss if the securities in its short portfolio outperform the securities in its long portfolio. The Advisor attempts to achieve returns for the Fund that at least exceed the return on short-term fixed-income securities, with the broader goal of generating attractive risk-adjusted total returns compared to the S&P 500® Total Return Index.

The Fund may use borrowings or short sales for investment purposes (i.e., leverage). The Fund’s use of short positions will add financial leverage that is similar to borrowing money for investment purposes. In determining when and to what extent to employ leverage, the Advisor will consider factors such as the relative risks and returns expected from the portfolio as a whole and the costs of such transactions. Borrowings may be structured as secured or unsecured loans and may have fixed or variable interest rates. The Fund may borrow or use short sales (i.e., leverage) to the maximum extent permitted by the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “1940 Act”). The Fund will use leverage when the Advisor believes the return from the additional investments will be greater than the costs associated with the borrowing. The Fund may at times hold long and short positions that in the aggregate exceed the value of its net assets (i.e., so that the Fund is effectively leveraged).

The Advisor will periodically reconstitute and rebalance the Fund’s portfolio, which may result in significant portfolio turnover. A higher rate of portfolio turnover increases transaction expenses, which

may negatively affect the Fund’s performance. High portfolio turnover also may result in the realization of substantial net short-term capital gains, which, when distributed, are taxable to shareholders as ordinary income.

3. *The “Portfolio Managers – Summary Section” of the Prospectus is deleted in its entirety and replaced with the following:*

Parker Binion, Chief of Compliance and Head of Investments of the Advisor, and Steven Vannelli, Portfolio Manager of the Advisor, have served as portfolio managers of the Fund since October 2024. Messrs. Parker and Vannelli are jointly and primarily responsible for the day-to-day management of the Fund’s portfolio.

4. *The first paragraph under the heading entitled “Portfolio Managers – Management of the Fund” of the Prospectus is deleted in its entirety and replaced with the following:*

**Parker Binion (AXS Adaptive Plus Fund, AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund, AXS Income Opportunities Fund, AXS Market Neutral Fund, AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund, AXS Tactical Income Fund, AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund)**, Chief of Compliance and Head of Investments of the Advisor, joined the Advisor in January 2021. Prior to joining the Advisor, Mr. Binion was a portfolio manager of Kerns Capital Management, Inc. since September 2014, and was responsible for managing the firm’s separately managed account strategies and hedging/net exposure strategies. Prior to 2014, Mr. Binion was an investment advisor representative with Heritage Capital from 2012 to 2014. He holds an A.B. in political science with a concentration in economics from Duke University and a J.D. with honors from the University of Texas at Austin.

5. *The following is added under the heading entitled “Portfolio Managers – Management of the Fund” of the Prospectus:*

**Steven Vannelli (AXS Market Neutral Fund)**, portfolio manager for the Fund, joined the Advisor in May 2024. Prior to joining the Advisor, Mr. Vannelli served as Managing Director and Chief Investment Officer of Knowledge Leaders Capital, LLC. From 1995 to 2005, Mr. Vannelli worked for Alexander Capital Management Group, a money management firm, as Head of Equities. He has over 26 years of portfolio management experience. Mr. Vannelli graduated from the University of Denver in 1995 and earned his CFA designation in 1999. He is currently a member of the Colorado Society of Security Analysts.

6. *The following is added to the “Other Accounts Managed by the Portfolio Managers” section of the SAI:*

As of August 31, 2024, information on other accounts managed by Steven Vannelli is as follows.

Portfolio Managers	Registered Investment Companies		Other Pooled Investment Vehicles		Other Accounts	
	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)
Steven Vannelli	1	\$133	0	\$0	0	\$0

Portfolio Managers	Number of Accounts with Advisory Fee Based on Performance					
	Registered Investment Companies		Other Pooled Investment Vehicles		Other Accounts	
	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)
Steven Vannelli	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0

7. *The following is added to the “Ownership of the Funds by Portfolio Managers” section of the SAI:*

The following chart sets forth the dollar range of equity securities owned by Steven Vannelli in the AXS Market Neutral Fund as of August 31, 2024.

	Dollar Range of Securities in the Fund (A: None, B: \$1-\$10,000, C: \$10,001-\$50,000, D: \$50,001-\$100,000, E: \$100,001 - \$500,000, F: \$500,001 - \$1,000,000, G: Over \$1,000,000)
<b>Name of Portfolio Manager</b>	<b>AXS Market Neutral Fund</b>
Steven Vannelli	A

**Effective on or about December 16, 2024:**

1. *The “Principal Investment Strategies” sections of the Prospectus will be deleted in their entirety and replaced with the following:*

The Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by balancing “long” and “short” positions. To do this, the Fund will invest in pairs of equity securities, such as leveraged and inverse exchange-traded funds (“ETFs”) as well as equities of U.S. companies, in equalized long and short exposures for which AXS Investments LLC, the Fund’s investment advisor (the “Advisor”), believes that the long position of the pairing will outperform the short position over a longer-term basis (at least one- year). Leveraged ETFs are designed to produce returns that are a multiple of the index or security to which they are linked. Inverse ETFs are constructed by using various derivatives for the purpose of profiting from a decline in the value of underlying index or underlying security. The Fund may invest in the securities of issuers of any size.

When the Fund takes a long position, it purchases shares of a stock or ETF outright. The Fund increases in value when the market price of the stock or ETF exceeds the cost per share to acquire the stock or ETF. In addition, the Fund will earn dividend income when dividends are paid on stocks and ETFs owned by the Fund. When the Fund takes a short position, it either: 1) sells at the current market price a stock it does not own but has borrowed, or 2) buys an inverse ETF in anticipation that the market price of the stock or inverse ETF’s underlying index or underlying security will decline or underperform the corresponding long positions in the Fund’s portfolio. To complete, or close out, a short sale transaction, the Fund buys the same stock in the market at a later date and returns it to the lender. To complete or close out an inverse ETF position, the Fund will sell its shares. In a short sale transaction, the Fund will make money if the market price of the borrowed stock goes down further than the borrowing costs, including dividend expenses when stocks held short pay dividends, and the Fund is able to replace the borrowed stock. While it is not guaranteed, the Advisor expects that dividend income will exceed dividend expense on an annual basis. Alternatively, if the price of the stock goes up after the short sale and before the short position is closed, the Fund will lose money on that position because it will have to pay more to replace the borrowed stock than the Fund received when the Fund sold the stock short.

Under normal circumstances, the Fund intends to generally remain “market neutral” on an “exposure-adjusted basis.” As used here, “exposure-adjusted” means that the Fund will periodically equalize the leverage exposure used by the long position in each pair with the short or inverse position of that pair. For example, when the leverage of the short positions is higher than the leverage of the long positions, fewer dollars of short positions are needed to offset the leverage of the long positions. In this case, the Fund will be “net long” on a dollar basis (i.e., more dollars invested in the long positions than in the short positions), but will still be “market neutral” on an exposure-adjusted basis. An “exposure-adjusted market neutral” strategy typically seeks to derive total returns strictly from stock picking Alpha, with none of the return over time coming from the general up and down movement of the broader stock market (described further below). Over time, since the Fund is exposure-adjusted market neutral, the Fund’s total return is expected to be largely independent of the positive or negative total returns of the broad stock market.

An actively managed stock portfolio's gross investment return is generally driven by three factors: (i) the overall stock market's return (i.e., in the Fund's case, the overall stock market's return is measured using the S&P 500® Total Return Index, the Fund's benchmark); (ii) the sensitivity of the portfolio to changes in prices in the overall stock market (i.e., the portfolio's Beta relative to the stock market); and (iii) the Advisor's ability to do better or worse than what would be predicted by multiplying the market's return by the portfolio's Beta (i.e., (i) times (ii) above). This last component (iii) is called Alpha and is the risk-adjusted outperformance or underperformance of the portfolio relative to the stock market. Since the Fund has generally attempted to hedge all of the overall market's returns on an exposure-adjusted basis through its short positions, all of the Fund's net return is expected to be solely the Alpha generated by the Advisor, less all of the Fund's fees and expenses.

By employing this long/short exposure-adjusted market neutral investment strategy, the Fund seeks to limit its volatility relative to movements in the overall stock market and limit downside risk during market declines. The Fund may achieve a gain if the securities in its long portfolio outperform the securities in its short portfolio, each taken as a whole, even if the short positions generate a loss, as long as the loss in the short portfolio does not exceed the gain in the long portfolio. Conversely, the Fund may incur a loss if the securities in its short portfolio outperform the securities in its long portfolio. The Advisor attempts to achieve returns for the Fund that at least exceed the return on short-term fixed-income securities, with the broader goal of generating attractive risk-adjusted total returns compared to the S&P 500® Total Return Index.

The Fund may use borrowings or short sales for investment purposes (i.e., leverage). The Fund's use of short positions will add financial leverage that is similar to borrowing money for investment purposes. In determining when and to what extent to employ leverage, the Advisor will consider factors such as the relative risks and returns expected from the portfolio as a whole and the costs of such transactions. Borrowings may be structured as secured or unsecured loans and may have fixed or variable interest rates. The Fund may borrow or use short sales (i.e., leverage) to the maximum extent permitted by the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the "1940 Act"). The Fund will use leverage when the Advisor believes the return from the additional investments will be greater than the costs associated with the borrowing. The Fund may at times hold long and short positions that in the aggregate exceed the value of its net assets (i.e., so that the Fund is effectively leveraged).

The Advisor selects securities for purchase or short sale based on the Advisor's volatility expectations, in an effort to capture spreads between certain securities. Spreads can occur as a result of the compounding of returns. Accordingly, the Fund may invest in leveraged ETFs that track a multiple of the quarterly or monthly returns of the underlying security or index, and short sell leveraged ETFs that track a multiple of the inverse daily returns of the underlying security or index. In addition, the Fund may hold long or short positions in stocks of U.S. companies and long positions in leveraged inverse ETFs of those companies.

The Advisor will periodically reconstitute and rebalance the Fund's portfolio, which may result in significant portfolio turnover. A higher rate of portfolio turnover increases transaction expenses, which may negatively affect the Fund's performance. High portfolio turnover also may result in the realization of substantial net short-term capital gains, which, when distributed, are taxable to shareholders as ordinary income.

2. *The following risks will be added to the “Principal Risks of Investing” sections of the Prospectus:*

**ETF Risk.** Investing in an ETF will provide the Fund with exposure to the securities comprising the index on which the ETF is based and will expose the Fund to risks similar to those of investing directly in those securities. Shares of ETFs typically trade on securities exchanges and may at times trade at a premium or discount to their net asset values. In addition, an ETF may not replicate exactly the performance of the benchmark index it seeks to track for a number of reasons, including transaction costs incurred by the ETF, the temporary unavailability of certain index securities in the secondary market or discrepancies between the ETF and the index with respect to the weighting of securities or the number of securities held. Investing in ETFs, which are investment companies, involves duplication of advisory fees and certain other expenses. The Fund will pay brokerage commissions in connection with the purchase and sale of shares of ETFs.

**Leveraged and Inverse Leveraged ETF Risk.** When the Fund invests in ETFs that seek to provide investment results that are the inverse leveraged multiple of the performance of an underlying index or security, the Fund will indirectly be subject to the risk that the performance of such ETF will fall as the performance of the ETF’s index or security rises—a result that is the opposite from traditional ETFs. The ETFs held by the Fund will utilize leverage (i.e., borrowing) to acquire their underlying portfolio investments. The use of leverage may exaggerate changes in an ETF’s share price and the return on its investments. Accordingly, the value of the Fund’s investments in ETFs may be more volatile and all other risks, including the risk of loss of an investment, tend to be compounded or magnified. Any losses suffered by an ETF as a result of the use of leverage could adversely affect the Fund’s NAV and an investor could incur a loss in their investment in the Fund. Leveraged and inverse leveraged ETFs are designed to achieve their objectives for the specific periods referred to in their stated investment objectives. If the Fund purchases shares of a leveraged or inverse leveraged ETF on a day other than the last business day of a calendar week, calendar month, or calendar quarter, as applicable, the Fund will generally receive more, or less, than the leveraged or inverse leveraged exposures to the underlying index or security from that point until the end of the week, month, or quarter, as applicable. If such an ETF’s shares are held for a period other than the period referred to in the ETF’s investment objective, the ETF’s performance is likely to deviate from the respective leveraged or inverse leveraged multiple exposure of the underlying index or security’s performance for the period the Fund is held. During periods of high volatility, an ETF may not perform as expected and may have losses when an investor may have expected gains if the ETF is held for a period that is different than that referred to in the ETF’s stated investment objective.

*Please file this Supplement with your records.*

**AXS Alternative Value Fund**  
Investor Class Shares: (COGLX)  
Class I Shares: (COGVX)

*A series of Investment Managers Series Trust II (the "Trust")*

**Supplement dated September 18, 2024 to the  
Prospectus, Summary Prospectus and Statement of Additional Information ("SAI"),  
each dated January 31, 2024.**

The Board of Trustees of the Trust has approved a Plan of Liquidation for the AXS Alternative Value Fund (the "Fund"). The Plan of Liquidation authorizes the termination, liquidation and dissolution of the Fund. In order to perform such liquidation, effective immediately, the Fund is closed to all new investment.

The Fund will be liquidated on or about September 27, 2024 (the "Liquidation Date"), and shareholders may redeem their shares until the Liquidation Date. Redemptions made on or after the date of this Supplement will not be subject to any redemption fee that would otherwise be applicable. On or promptly after the Liquidation Date, the Fund will make a liquidating distribution to its remaining shareholders equal to each shareholder's proportionate interest in the net assets of the Fund, in complete redemption and cancellation of the Fund's shares held by the shareholder, and the Fund will be dissolved. Any liquidation proceeds paid to a shareholder should generally be treated as received in exchange for shares and will therefore generally give rise to a capital gain or loss depending on the shareholder's tax basis. Shareholders (including but not limited to shareholders holding shares through tax-deferred accounts) should contact their tax advisers to discuss the income tax consequences of the liquidation. Under certain circumstances, liquidation proceeds may be subject to withholding taxes.

In anticipation of the liquidation of the Fund, Quantitative Value Technologies, LLC, d/b/a Cognios Capital, the Fund's sub-advisor, may manage the Fund in a manner intended to facilitate its orderly liquidation, such as by raising cash or making investments in other highly liquid assets. As a result, during this time, all or a portion of the Fund may not be invested in a manner consistent with its stated investment strategies, which may prevent the Fund from achieving its investment objective.

Please contact the Fund at 1-833-AXS-ALTS (1-833-297-2587) if you have any questions or need assistance.

*Please file this Supplement with your records.*

---



**AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund**

Class A Shares: ADOAX

Class I Shares: ADOIX

**AXS Tactical Income Fund**

Class A Shares: TINAX

Class I Shares: TINIX

**AXS Adaptive Plus Fund**

Investor Class Shares: AXSVX

Class I Shares: AXSPX

*Each a series of Investment Managers Series Trust II*

**Supplement dated May 31, 2024, to the  
Prospectus and Statement of Additional Information (“SAI”), each dated January 31, 2024.**

*Effective May 31, 2024 (the “Effective Date”), Jordan Kahn and Alan Savoian are no longer portfolio managers to the AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund (the “Dynamic Opportunity Fund”) and Jordan Kahn and Eric Hua are no longer portfolio managers of the AXS Tactical Income Fund (the “Tactical Income Fund”, and together with the Dynamic Opportunity Fund, the “Funds”). Additionally, Travis Trampe has been added as a portfolio manager to each Fund. Parker Binion continues to serve as a portfolio manager to each Fund. Accordingly, as of the Effective Date, the Prospectus and SAI are updated as follows:*

*The “Portfolio Managers – Summary Section” of the Prospectus for each Fund is replaced with the following:*

Parker Binion, Portfolio Manager of the Advisor, has served as portfolio manager of the Fund since the Fund’s inception following the Reorganization of the Predecessor Fund. Travis Trampe, Portfolio Manager of the Advisor, has served as portfolio manager of the Fund since May 2024. Messrs. Binion and Trampe are jointly and primarily responsible for the day-to-day management of the Fund’s portfolio.

*The second paragraph under the heading entitled “Portfolio Managers – Management of the Fund” section of the Prospectus is deleted in its entirety and replaced with:*

**Travis Trampe (AXS Adaptive Plus Fund, AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund, AXS Income Opportunities Fund, AXS Tactical Income Fund, AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund)** joined the Advisor in 2022. Prior to joining the Advisor, Mr. Trampe was a portfolio manager with ETF issuers and asset management firms for over 15 years, where he was responsible for managing ETFs, mutual funds, UCITS and other fund vehicles. Mr. Trampe’s asset management tenure includes longtime experience in portfolio management, trade execution and fund operations in U.S. and global securities markets. Mr. Trampe holds a B.S. in finance and mathematics from Nebraska Wesleyan University.

The information with respect to Mr. Trampe under the section entitled “Other Accounts Managed by the Portfolio Managers” of the SAI is updated as follows:

As of March 31, 2024, information on other accounts managed by Travis Trampe is as follows.

Portfolio Managers	Registered Investment Companies		Other Pooled Investment Vehicles		Other Accounts	
	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)
Travis Trampe	10	\$817.5	0	\$0	0	\$0

Portfolio Managers	Number of Accounts with Advisory Fee Based on Performance					
	Registered Investment Companies		Other Pooled Investment Vehicles		Other Accounts	
	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)
Travis Trampe	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0

The information with respect to Mr. Trampe under the section entitled “Ownership of the Funds by Portfolio Managers” of the SAI is updated as follows:

The following chart sets forth the dollar range of equity securities owned by Travis Trampe in the Fund as of March 31, 2024.

Dollar Range of Fund Shares Owned In (None, \$1-\$10,000, \$10,001-\$50,000, \$50,001-\$100,000, \$100,001-\$500,000, \$500,001-\$1,000,000, Over \$1,000,000)		
Name of Portfolio Manager	AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	AXS Tactical Income Fund
Travis Trampe	A	A

All references to Messrs. Kahn, Savoian, and Hua are removed from the Prospectus and SAI.

Additionally, effective immediately, the AXS Adaptive Plus Fund observes the following restriction as a matter of operating but not fundamental policy:

With respect to the AXS Adaptive Plus Fund, to the extent the Fund is an “acquired fund” in a fund of funds arrangement relying on Rule 12d1-4 under the 1940 Act, the Fund will limit its acquisition of securities of investment companies and companies that would be investment companies under the 1940 Act but for the exclusion from the definition of investment company in Section 3(c)(1) or Section 3(c)(7) of the 1940 Act to an aggregate amount that does not exceed 10% of the Fund’s total assets (measured immediately after acquisition); provided that such limitation shall not apply to investments by the Fund in: (a) another fund as part of a master-feeder structure in reliance on Section 12(d)(1)(E) of the 1940 Act (master feeder arrangements); (b) money market funds in reliance on Rule 12d1-1; (c) a wholly owned and controlled subsidiary of the Fund; (d) securities received as a dividend or as a result of a plan of reorganization of a company; or (e) securities of another fund received pursuant to an interfund lending arrangement permitted by an exemptive order issued by the SEC.

**Please file this Supplement with your records.**

**AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund**

Investor Class Shares –KCMTX

Class I Shares – KCMIX

**AXS Sustainable Income Fund**

Class A Shares – AXSMX

Class I Shares – AXSKX

*Each a series of Investment Managers Series Trust II (the “Trust”)*

**Supplement dated March 18, 2024 to the Prospectus, Summary Prospectuses  
and Statement of Additional Information (“SAI”), each dated January 31, 2024.**

The Board of Trustees of the Trust has approved a Plan of Liquidation for each of the AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund and the AXS Sustainable Income Fund (each a “Fund”, together, the “Funds”). Each Plan of Liquidation authorizes the termination, liquidation and dissolution of the respective Fund. In order to perform such liquidation, effective immediately, each Fund is closed to all new investment.

Each Fund will be liquidated on or about April 26, 2024 (the “Liquidation Date”), and shareholders may redeem their shares until the Liquidation Date. Redemptions made on or after the date of this Supplement will not be subject to any redemption fee that would otherwise be applicable. On or promptly after the Liquidation Date, each Fund will make a liquidating distribution to its remaining shareholders equal to each shareholder’s proportionate interest in the net assets of the respective Fund, in complete redemption and cancellation of the respective Fund’s shares held by the shareholder, and each Fund will be dissolved. Any liquidation proceeds paid to a shareholder should generally be treated as received in exchange for shares and will therefore generally give rise to a capital gain or loss depending on the shareholder’s tax basis. Shareholders (including but not limited to shareholders holding shares through tax-deferred accounts) should contact their tax advisers to discuss the income tax consequences of the liquidation. Under certain circumstances, liquidation proceeds may be subject to withholding taxes.

In anticipation of the liquidation of each Fund, AXS Investments LLC, each Fund’s advisor, and Green Alpha Advisors, LLC and Uniplan Investment Counsel, Inc., sub-advisors to the AXS Sustainable Income Fund, may manage the respective Fund in a manner intended to facilitate its orderly liquidation, such as by raising cash or making investments in other highly liquid assets. As a result, during this time, all or a portion of each Fund may not be invested in a manner consistent with its stated investment strategies, which may prevent the Fund from achieving its investment objective.

Please contact the Funds at 1-833-297-2587 if you have any questions or need assistance.

***Please file this Supplement with your records.***

# Statement of Additional Information

January 31, 2024

## AXS Funds

### AXS Adaptive Plus Fund

Investor Class Shares: AXSVX  
Class I Shares: AXSPX

### AXS Alternative Value Fund

Investor Class Shares: COGLX  
Class I Shares: COGVX

### AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund

Class A Shares: ECHAX  
Class C Shares: ECHCX  
Class I Shares: EQCHX

### AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund

Class A Shares: ADOAX  
Class I Shares: ADOIX

### AXS Income Opportunities Fund

Class A Shares: OIOAX  
Class D Shares: OIODX  
Class I Shares: OIOIX

### AXS Market Neutral Fund

Investor Class Shares: COGMX  
Class I Shares: COGIX

### AXS Merger Fund

Investor Class Shares: GAKAX  
Class I Shares: GAKIX

### AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund

Investor Class Shares: KCMTX  
Class I Shares: KCMIX

### AXS Sustainable Income Fund

Class A Shares: AXSMX  
Class I Shares: AXSKX

### AXS Tactical Income Fund

Class A Shares: TINAX  
Class I Shares: TINIX

### AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund

Class A Shares: LDVAX  
Class C Shares: LDVCX  
Class I Shares: LDVIX

*Each a series of Investment Managers Series Trust II*

This Statement of Additional Information (“SAI”) is not a prospectus, and it should be read in conjunction with the Prospectus dated January 31, 2024, of the AXS Adaptive Plus Fund, AXS Alternative Value Fund, AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund, AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund, AXS Income Opportunities Fund, AXS Market Neutral Fund, AXS Merger Fund, AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund, AXS Sustainable Income Fund, AXS Tactical Income Fund and AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund (formerly the AXS Thomson Reuters Ventures Capital Return Tracker Fund) (each, a “Fund” and, collectively, the “Funds”), each a series of Investment Managers Series Trust II (the “Trust”). AXS Investments LLC (the “Advisor”) is the investment advisor to the Funds. Set forth below is a table of the sub-advisors (each, a “Sub-Advisor” and, collectively, the “Sub-Advisors”) of the sub-advised Funds.

<b>Fund</b>	<b>Sub-Advisors</b>
AXS Alternative Value Fund	Quantitative Value Technologies LLC d/b/a Cognios Capital (“Cognios”)
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	Chesapeake Capital Corporation (“Chesapeake”)
AXS Market Neutral Fund	Cognios
AXS Merger Fund	Kellner Management, L.P. (“Kellner”)
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	Green Alpha Advisors, LLC (“Green Alpha”) and Uniplan Investment Counsel, Inc. (“Uniplan”)

A copy of the Funds’ Prospectus may be obtained by contacting the Funds at the address or telephone number specified below. The Funds’ Annual Report to shareholders for the fiscal year September 30, 2023, is incorporated by reference herein. A copy of the Funds’ Annual Report can be obtained by contacting the Funds at the address or telephone number specified below.

**AXS Funds**  
**P.O. Box 2175**  
**Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53201**  
**1-833-AXS-ALTS**  
(1-833-297-2587)

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

---

**THE TRUST AND THE FUNDS..... B-2**  
**INVESTMENT STRATEGIES, POLICIES AND RISKS ..... B-3**  
**INVESTMENT RESTRICTIONS ..... B-42**  
**MANAGEMENT OF THE FUND ..... B-43**  
**PORTFOLIO TRANSACTIONS AND BROKERAGE ..... B-64**  
**PORTFOLIO TURNOVER..... B-66**  
**PROXY VOTING POLICY ..... B-67**  
**ANTI-MONEY LAUNDERING PROGRAM ..... B-67**  
**PORTFOLIO HOLDINGS INFORMATION..... B-67**  
**DETERMINATION OF NET ASSET VALUE..... B-69**  
**PURCHASE AND REDEMPTION OF FUND SHARES ..... B-70**  
**FEDERAL INCOME TAX MATTERS ..... B-71**  
**DIVIDENDS AND DISTRIBUTIONS..... B-77**  
**GENERAL INFORMATION..... B-78**  
**FINANCIAL STATEMENTS ..... B-80**  
**APPENDIX A – DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES RATINGS..... B-81**  
**APPENDIX B – PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES..... B-86**

## THE TRUST AND THE FUNDS

The Trust is an open-end management investment company organized as a Delaware statutory trust under the laws of the State of Delaware on August 20, 2013. The Trust currently consists of several other series of shares of beneficial interest. This SAI relates only to the Funds and not to the other series of the Trust.

The Trust is registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) as an open-end management investment company. Such a registration does not involve supervision of the management or policies of the Fund. The Prospectus of the Fund and this SAI omit certain of the information contained in the Registration Statement filed with the SEC. Copies of such information may be obtained from the SEC upon payment of the prescribed fee.

Each of the Funds, except the AXS Adaptive Plus Fund, acquired all the assets and liabilities of the following funds (each a “Predecessor Fund”) as of the date listed below. Each Fund adopted the prior performance and financial history of the corresponding Predecessor Fund.

<b>Fund</b>	<b>Predecessor Fund</b>	<b>Acquisition Date</b>
AXS Alternative Value Fund	AXS Alternative Value Fund <sup>1</sup>	March 5, 2021
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	Equinox Chesapeake Strategy Fund <sup>2</sup>	November 8, 2019
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	ACM Dynamic Opportunity Fund <sup>3</sup>	April 28, 2023
AXS Income Opportunities Fund	Orinda Income Opportunities Fund <sup>4</sup>	May 13, 2022
AXS Market Neutral Fund	AXS Market Neutral Fund <sup>1</sup>	March 5, 2021
AXS Merger Fund	Kellner Merger Fund <sup>5</sup>	January 22, 2021
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	KCM Macro Trends Fund <sup>6</sup>	October 18, 2019
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	SKY Harbor Short Duration High Yield Partners, L.P. <sup>7</sup>	October 16, 2020
AXS Tactical Income Fund	ACM Tactical Income Fund <sup>3</sup>	April 28, 2023
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	Leland Thomson Reuters Venture Capital Index Fund <sup>8</sup>	November 20, 2020

- 1 The AXS Alternative Value Fund and the AXS Market Neutral Fund were each a series of M3Sixty Funds Trust.
- 2 The Equinox Chesapeake Strategy Fund was a series of Equinox Funds Trust.
- 3 The ACM Dynamic Opportunity Fund and ACM Tactical Income Fund were each a series of Northern Lights Fund Trust III.
- 4 The Orinda Income Opportunities Fund was a series of The RBB Fund, Inc.
- 5 The Kellner Merger Fund was a series of Advisors Series Trust.
- 6 The KCM Macro Trends Fund was a series of Northern Lights Fund Trust.
- 7 The SKY Harbor Short Duration High Yield Partners, L.P. was a Delaware limited partnership.
- 8 The Leland Thomson Reuters Private Equity Buyout Index Fund and the Leland Thomson Reuters Venture Capital Index Fund were each a series of Northern Lights Fund Trust III.

Each of the Funds, except for the AXS Merger Fund and AXS Adaptive Plus Fund, is classified as a diversified fund, which means it is subject to the diversification requirements under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “1940 Act”). Under the 1940 Act, a diversified fund may not, with respect to 75% of its total assets, invest more than 5% of its total assets in the securities of one issuer (and in not more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer), excluding cash, Government securities, and securities of other investment companies. A Fund’s classification as a diversified fund may only be changed with the approval of the Fund’s shareholders.

The Funds currently offer several classes of shares as described on the cover page of this SAI. Other classes may be established from time to time in accordance with the provisions of the Trust’s Agreement and Declaration of Trust (the “Declaration of Trust”). Each class of shares of a Fund generally is identical in all respects except that each class of shares is subject to its own distribution expenses and minimum investments. Each class of shares also has exclusive voting rights with respect to its distribution fees.

## INVESTMENT STRATEGIES, POLICIES AND RISKS

The discussion below supplements information contained in the Funds' Prospectus pertaining to the investment policies of one or more of the Funds.

The AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund may invest up to 25% of its total assets in a wholly-owned and controlled subsidiary (the "Subsidiary") at each quarter end of the Fund's fiscal year. The Subsidiary is an exempted company incorporated with limited liability under the laws of the Cayman Islands. The Fund is the sole shareholder of its Subsidiary. The Subsidiary is advised by its Sub-Advisor, as applicable, and has the same investment objective as the Fund. The Subsidiary complies with Section 8 of the 1940 Act governing investment policies and Section 18 of the 1940 Act governing capital structure and leverage on an aggregate basis with the corresponding Fund. The Subsidiary also complies with Section 17 of the 1940 Act governing affiliated transactions and custody. Because the Subsidiary invests in some of the investments described in this SAI, the corresponding Fund will be directly or indirectly exposed to such investments. For that reason, references in the SAI to investments by, and activities and risks of, the AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund may also include investments by, and activities and risks of, the Subsidiary.

Investment through the Subsidiaries is expected to allow the corresponding Funds to gain exposure to the commodity markets within the limitations of the federal tax law requirements applicable to regulated investment companies. The AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund has not received a private letter ruling from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") confirming that income derived from its Subsidiary will constitute qualifying income to the Fund. The IRS is no longer issuing private letter rulings to that effect. The tax treatment of a Fund's investment in commodity interests or in the Subsidiary could be adversely affected by future legislation or Treasury regulations.

The Funds' principal investment strategies and related risks are identified in the below table and described in detail following the table. A Fund may also invest, to a lesser extent, in investments other than those identified as its principal investments.

Investments and Risks	AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	AXS Alternative Value Fund	AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	AXS Income Opportunities Fund	AXS Market Neutral Fund	AXS Merger Fund	AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	AXS Sustainable Income Fund	AXS Tactical Income Fund	AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund
Equity Securities:	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Common Stock	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
Preferred Stock		X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
Small- and Mid-Cap Stocks		X		X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Warrants and Rights		X			X	X		X	X		
Convertible Securities		X			X	X			X		
Venture Capital Investing											X
Large-Cap Stocks	X	X		X	X	X	X	X			X
Debt Securities:		X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Government Obligations	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Mortgage-Backed Securities					X				X		
Asset-Backed Securities					X				X		
Agency Obligations					X				X	X	
Lower-Rated Debt Securities					X				X	X	

Investments and Risks	AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	AXS Alternative Value Fund	AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	AXS Income Opportunities Fund	AXS Market Neutral Fund	AXS Merger Fund	AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	AXS Sustainable Income Fund	AXS Tactical Income Fund	AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund
Over-the-Counter Transactions – Fixed Income Securities										X	
Sovereign Debt Obligations										X	
Zero Coupon, Step Coupon, and Pay-In-Kind Securities									X	X	
Floating Rate, Inverse Floating Rate and Index Obligations									X	X	
Bank Loans and Loan Participations										X	
Collateralized Loan Obligations										X	
Foreign Investments:		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Emerging Markets			X	X	X					X	
Foreign Currency Transactions			X		X					X	
Depository Receipts		X		X	X	X		X		X	
Europe – Recent Events		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Developments in the China Region		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Derivatives:	X		X	X	X		X	X		X	X
Options on Securities	X			X	X			X		X	
Futures and Options on Futures	X		X	X	X			X	X	X	
Stock Index Futures	X		X					X			X
Commodity Contracts			X					X			X
Forwards			X								
Swaps	X		X		X			X			X
Counterparty Risk			X	X	X			X		X	X
OTC Derivative Transactions			X		X						X
Investment Company Securities	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Exchange Traded Funds	X	X		X	X	X		X	X	X	X
Leveraged and Inverse ETFs	X							X			
Closed-End Funds									X		
Exchange Traded Notes		X		X	X					X	



Investments and Risks	AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	AXS Alternative Value Fund	AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	AXS Income Opportunities Fund	AXS Market Neutral Fund	AXS Merger Fund	AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	AXS Sustainable Income Fund	AXS Tactical Income Fund	AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles									X		
Master Limited Partnerships					X		X				
When-Issued or Delayed-Delivery Instruments									X		
Illiquid and Restricted Securities		X	X			X	X	X	X		X
Structured Investments									X		
Short Sales	X		X	X	X	X	X	X			
REITs	X	X		X	X	X	X	X			
ESG Criteria Risk									X		
Borrowing		X				X			X		
Temporary Investments	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Short-Term Investments		X	X			X	X	X	X	X	X
Commercial Paper, Short-Term Notes and Other Corporate Obligations		X	X			X		X	X	X	
Certificates of Deposit, Bankers' Acceptances and Time Deposits		X				X			X	X	
Savings Association Obligations		X				X			X	X	
Municipal Bonds										X	
Large Shareholder Redemption Risk		X	X			X	X	X	X		X
Cybersecurity Risk	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
LIBOR Risk	X		X					X	X		X
Index Investing											X
Tracking Error											X
Licensing											X
Concentration											X
Repurchase Agreements		X				X			X		
Reverse Repurchase Agreements		X				X					
Private Placements and Restricted Securities					X						
Lending Portfolio Securities		X				X			X		
Initial Public Offerings					X						

## **MARKET CONDITIONS**

Events in certain sectors historically have resulted, and may in the future result, in an unusually high degree of volatility in the financial markets, both domestic and foreign. These events have included, but are not limited to: bankruptcies, corporate restructurings, and other events related to the sub-prime mortgage crisis in 2008; governmental efforts to limit short selling and high frequency trading; measures to address U.S. federal and state budget deficits; social, political, and economic instability in Europe; economic stimulus by the Japanese central bank; steep declines in oil prices; dramatic changes in currency exchange rates; China's economic slowdown; and Russia's invasion of Ukraine. Interconnected global economies and financial markets increase the possibility that conditions in one country or region might adversely impact issuers in a different country or region. Such events may cause significant declines in the values and liquidity of many securities and other instruments. It is impossible to predict whether such conditions will recur. Because such situations may be widespread, it may be difficult to identify both risks and opportunities using past models of the interplay of market forces, or to predict the duration of such events.

An outbreak of an infectious respiratory illness caused by a novel coronavirus known as COVID-19 was first detected in China in December 2019 and then was detected globally. This coronavirus has resulted in certain travel restrictions, closed international borders, enhanced health screenings at ports of entry and elsewhere, disruption of and delays in healthcare service preparation and delivery, prolonged quarantines, cancellations, supply chain disruptions, and lower consumer demand, as well as general concern and uncertainty. The impact of COVID-19, and other infectious illness outbreaks that may arise in the future, could adversely affect the economies of many nations or the entire global economy, individual issuers and capital markets in ways that cannot necessarily be foreseen. In addition, the impact of infectious illnesses in emerging market countries may be greater due to generally less established healthcare systems. Public health crises caused by the COVID-19 outbreak may exacerbate other pre-existing political, social and economic risks in certain countries or globally. The duration of the COVID-19 outbreak and its effects cannot be determined with certainty.

## **EQUITY SECURITIES**

### **Common Stock**

The Funds may invest in common stock. Common stock represents an equity (ownership) interest in a company, and usually possesses voting rights and earns dividends. Dividends on common stock are not fixed but are declared at the discretion of the issuer. Common stock generally represents the riskiest investment in a company. In addition, common stock generally has the greatest appreciation and depreciation potential because increases and decreases in earnings are usually reflected in a company's stock price.

The fundamental risk of investing in common stock is that the value of the stock might decrease. Stock values fluctuate in response to the activities of an individual company or in response to general market and/or economic conditions. While common stocks have historically provided greater long-term returns than preferred stocks, fixed-income and money market investments, common stocks have also experienced significantly more volatility than the returns from those other investments.

### **Venture Capital Investing**

Venture capital is a type of equity financing that addresses the funding needs of entrepreneurial companies that for reasons of size, assets, and stage of development cannot seek capital from more traditional sources, such as public markets and banks. Additional special risks inherent in venture capital-funded companies include that little public information exists for such companies, which are frequently private and thinly traded companies. Such a lack of information may lead to greater tracking error between the Underlying Index and the TR VC Research Index or adversely affect the correlation of the AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund's performance to that of the U.S. venture capital industry, generally. In addition, because new or very early companies inherently carry a degree of risk, including the risk that a company will fail, the returns of the venture capital backed companies may be subject to greater volatility than the returns of more established publicly traded companies. As a result, the Fund's returns also may experience greater volatility than a direct or indirect investment in more established public companies. The Fund does not invest in venture capital funds nor does it invest in the companies funded by venture capital funds.

### **Preferred Stock**

The Funds may invest in preferred stock. Preferred stock is a class of stock having a preference over common stock as to the payment of dividends and a share of the proceeds resulting from the issuer's liquidation although preferred stock is usually subordinate to the debt securities of the issuer. Some preferred stocks also entitle their holders to receive additional liquidation proceeds on the same basis as the holders of the issuer's common stock. Preferred stock typically does not possess voting rights and its market value may change based on changes in interest rates. If interest rates rise, the fixed dividend on preferred stocks may be less attractive, causing the price of preferred stocks to decline. Preferred stock may have mandatory sinking fund provisions, as well as call/redemption provisions prior to maturity, a negative feature when interest rates decline. In addition, a fund may receive stocks or warrants as a result of an exchange or tender of fixed income securities. Preference stock, which is more common in emerging markets than in developed markets, is a special type of common stock that shares in the earnings of an issuer, has limited voting rights, may have a dividend preference, and may also have a liquidation preference. Depending on the features of the particular security, holders of preferred and preference stock may bear the risks regarding common stock or fixed income securities.

### **Small- and Mid-Cap Stocks**

The Funds may invest in stock of companies with market capitalizations that are small compared to other publicly traded companies. Investments in larger companies present certain advantages in that such companies generally have greater financial resources, more extensive research and development, manufacturing, marketing and service capabilities, and more stability and greater depth of management and personnel. Investments in smaller, less seasoned companies may present greater opportunities for growth but also may involve greater risks than customarily are associated with more established companies. The securities of smaller companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than larger, more established companies. These companies may have limited product lines, markets or financial resources, or they may be dependent upon a limited management group. Their securities may be traded in the over-the-counter market or on a regional exchange, or may otherwise have limited liquidity. As a result of owning large positions in this type of security, a Fund is subject to the additional risk of possibly having to sell portfolio securities at disadvantageous times and prices if redemptions require a Fund to liquidate its securities positions. In addition, it may be prudent for a Fund, as its asset size grows, to limit the number of relatively small positions it holds in securities having limited liquidity in order to minimize its exposure to such risks, to minimize transaction costs, and to maximize the benefits of research. As a consequence, as a Fund's asset size increases, a Fund may reduce its exposure to illiquid small capitalization securities, which could adversely affect performance.

The Funds may also invest in stocks of companies with medium market capitalizations (i.e., mid-cap companies). Such investments share some of the risk characteristics of investments in stocks of companies with small market capitalizations described above, although mid cap companies tend to have longer operating histories, broader product lines and greater financial resources and their stocks tend to be more liquid and less volatile than those of smaller capitalization issuers.

### **Large-Cap Stocks**

The Funds may invest in stock of companies with large market capitalizations. Larger, more established companies may be unable to attain the high growth rates of successful, smaller companies during periods of economic expansion. In addition, large-capitalization companies may be unable to respond quickly to new competitive challenges, such as changes in technology and consumer tastes, and may be more prone to global economic risks.

### **Warrants and Rights**

The Funds may invest in warrants or rights (including those acquired in units or attached to other securities) that entitle (but do not obligate) the holder to buy equity securities at a specific price for a specific period of time but will do so only if such equity securities are deemed appropriate by the Advisor, as applicable. Rights are similar to warrants but typically have a shorter duration and are issued by a company to existing stockholders to provide those holders the right to purchase additional shares of stock at a later date. Warrants and rights do not have voting rights, do not earn dividends, and do not entitle the holder to any rights with respect to the assets of the company that has issued them. They do not represent ownership of the underlying companies but only the right to purchase shares of those companies at a specified price on or before a specified exercise date. Warrants and rights tend to be more volatile than the underlying stock, and if at a warrant's expiration date the stock is trading at a price below the price set in the warrant, the warrant will expire.

worthless. Conversely, if at the expiration date the stock is trading at a price higher than the price set in the warrant or right, a Fund can acquire the stock at a price below its market value. The prices of warrants and rights do not necessarily parallel the prices of the underlying securities. An investment in warrants or rights may be considered speculative.

### **Convertible Securities**

The Funds may invest in convertible securities. A convertible security is a preferred stock, warrant or other security that may be converted or exchanged for a prescribed amount of common stock or other security of the same or a different issuer or into cash within a particular period of time at a specified price or formula. A convertible security generally entitles the holder to receive the dividend or interest until the convertible security matures or is redeemed, converted or exchanged. Before conversion, convertible securities generally have characteristics similar to both fixed income and equity securities. Although to a lesser extent than with fixed income securities generally, the market value of convertible securities tends to decline as interest rates increase and, conversely, tends to increase as interest rates decline. In addition, because of the conversion feature, the market value of convertible securities tends to vary with fluctuations in the market value of the underlying common stocks and, therefore, also will react to variations in the general market for equity securities. A significant feature of convertible securities is that as the market price of the underlying common stock declines, convertible securities tend to trade increasingly on a yield basis, and so they may not experience market value declines to the same extent as the underlying common stock. When the market price of the underlying common stock increases, the prices of the convertible securities tend to rise as a reflection of the value of the underlying common stock. While no securities investments are without risk, investments in convertible securities generally entail less risk than investments in common stock of the same issuer.

### **SHORT SALES**

A Fund may seek to hedge investments or realize additional gains through the use of short sales. A short sale is a transaction in which a Fund sells a security it does not own in anticipation that the market price of that security will decline. If the price of the security sold short increases between the time of the short sale and the time a Fund replaces the borrowed security, the Fund will incur a loss; conversely, if the price declines, the Fund will realize a capital gain. Any gain will be decreased, and any loss will be increased, by the transaction costs incurred by a Fund, including the costs associated with providing collateral to the broker-dealer (usually cash and liquid securities) and the maintenance of collateral with its custodian. A Fund also may be required to pay a premium to borrow a security, which would increase the cost of the security sold short. Although a Fund's gain is limited to the price at which it sold the security short, its potential loss is theoretically unlimited.

The broker-dealer will retain the net proceeds of the short sale to the extent necessary to meet margin requirements until the short position is closed out.

When the Sub-Advisor believes that the price of a particular security held by a Fund may decline, it may make "short sales against the box" to hedge the unrealized gain on such security. Selling short against the box involves selling a security which a Fund owns for delivery at a specified date in the future. A Fund will incur transaction costs to open, maintain and close short sales against the box.

### **REAL ESTATE INVESTMENT TRUSTS ("REITs")**

The Funds may invest in REITs. REITs are pooled investment vehicles that invest primarily in income producing real estate or real estate related loans or interests. REITs are generally classified as equity REITs, mortgage REITs, or a combination of equity and mortgage REITs. Equity REITs invest the majority of their assets directly in real property and derive income primarily from the collection of rents. Equity REITs can also realize capital gains by selling properties that have appreciated in value. Mortgage REITs invest the majority of their assets in real estate mortgages and derive income from the collection of principal and interest payments. Similar to regulated investment companies such as the Fund, REITs are not taxed on income distributed to shareholders provided they comply with certain requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"). The Fund will indirectly bear its proportionate share of expenses incurred by REITs in which the Fund invests in addition to the expenses incurred directly by the Fund.

Investing in REITs involves certain unique risks in addition to those risks associated with investing in the real estate industry in general. Equity REITs may be affected by changes in the value of the underlying property owned by the REITs, while mortgage REITs may be affected by the quality of any credit extended. REITs are dependent upon management skills, are not diversified, and are subject to heavy cash flow dependency, default by borrowers and self-liquidation.

Investing in REITs involves risks similar to those associated with investing in small capitalization companies. REITs may have limited financial resources, may trade less frequently and in a limited volume and may be subject to more abrupt or erratic price movements than larger company securities. Historically, small capitalization stocks, such as REITs, have had more price volatility than larger capitalization stocks.

REITs may fail to qualify for the favorable federal income tax treatment generally available to them under the Code and may fail to maintain their exemptions from registration under the 1940 Act. REITs (especially mortgage REITs) also are subject to interest rate risks. When interest rates decline, the value of a REIT's investment in fixed-rate obligations can be expected to rise. Conversely, when interest rates rise, the value of a REIT's investment in fixed-rate obligations can be expected to decline. In contrast, as interest rates on adjustable rate mortgage loans are reset periodically, yields on a REIT's investments in such loans will gradually align themselves to reflect changes in market interest rates, causing the value of such investments to fluctuate less dramatically in response to interest rate fluctuations than would investments in fixed-rate obligations.

Effective for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017, the recently enacted Tax Cuts and Jobs Act generally allows individuals and certain other non-corporate entities, such as partnerships, a deduction for 20% of qualified REIT dividends. Recently issued proposed regulations allow a RIC to pass the character of its qualified RIC dividends through to its shareholders provided certain holding period requirements are met.

### **DEBT SECURITIES**

The Funds may invest in debt securities. Debt securities are used by issuers to borrow money. Generally, issuers pay investors periodic interest and repay the amount borrowed either periodically during the life of the security and/or at maturity. Some debt securities, such as zero coupon bonds, do not pay current interest, but are purchased at a discount from their face values and accrue interest at the applicable coupon rate over a specified time period. Some debt securities pay a periodic coupon that is not fixed; instead payments "float" relative to a reference rate, such as the Secured Overnight Financing Rate ("SOFR"). This "floating rate" debt may pay interest at levels above or below the previous interest payment. The market prices of debt securities fluctuate depending on such factors as interest rates, credit quality and maturity. In general, market prices of debt securities decline when interest rates rise and increase when interest rates fall.

Lower rated debt securities, those rated Ba or below by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") and/or BB or below by Standard & Poor's Ratings Group ("S&P") or unrated but determined by the Advisor or Sub-advisor, as applicable, to be of comparable quality, are described by the rating agencies as speculative and involve greater risk of default or price changes than higher rated debt securities due to changes in the issuer's creditworthiness or the fact that the issuer may already be in default. The market prices of these securities may fluctuate more than higher quality securities and may decline significantly in periods of general economic difficulty. It may be more difficult to sell or to determine the value of lower rated debt securities.

Certain additional risk factors related to debt securities are discussed below:

**Sensitivity to interest rate and economic changes.** Debt securities may be sensitive to economic changes, political and corporate developments, and interest rate changes. In addition, during an economic downturn or periods of rising interest rates, issuers that are highly leveraged may experience increased financial stress that could adversely affect their ability to meet projected business goals, obtain additional financing, and service their principal and interest payment obligations. Furthermore, periods of economic change and uncertainty can be expected to result in increased volatility of market prices and yields of certain debt securities. For example, prices of these securities can be affected by financial contracts held by the issuer or third parties (such as derivatives) related to the security or other assets or indices.

**Payment expectations.** Debt securities may contain redemption or call provisions. If an issuer exercises these provisions in a lower interest rate environment, the Funds would have to replace the security with a lower yielding security, resulting in decreased income to investors. If the issuer of a debt security defaults on its obligations to pay interest or principal or is the subject of bankruptcy proceedings, the Funds may incur losses or expenses in seeking recovery of amounts owed to it.

**Liquidity.** Liquidity risk may result from the lack of an active market, or reduced number and capacity of traditional market participants to make a market in fixed income securities, and may be magnified in a rising interest rate environment or other circumstances where investor redemptions from fixed income mutual funds may be higher than normal, causing increased supply in the market due to selling activity. In such cases, the Funds, due to limitations on investments in illiquid securities and the difficulty in purchasing and selling such securities or instruments, may be unable to achieve its desired level of exposure to a certain sector. To the extent that the Funds' principal investment strategies involve investments in securities of companies with smaller market capitalizations, foreign non-U.S. securities, Rule 144A securities, illiquid sectors of fixed income securities, derivatives or securities with substantial market and/or credit risk, the Funds will tend to have the greatest exposure to liquidity risk. Further, fixed income securities with longer durations until maturity face heightened levels of liquidity risk as compared to fixed income securities with shorter durations until maturity. Finally, liquidity risk also refers to the risk of unusually high redemption requests or other unusual market conditions that may make it difficult for the Funds to fully honor redemption requests within the allowable time period. Meeting such redemption requests could require the Funds to sell securities at reduced prices or under unfavorable conditions, which would reduce the value of the Funds. It may also be the case that other market participants may be attempting to liquidate fixed income holdings at the same time as the Funds, causing increased supply in the market and contributing to liquidity risk and downward pricing pressure.

The Advisor or Sub-advisor, as applicable, attempts to reduce the risks described above through diversification of the Funds' portfolio, credit analysis of each issuer, and by monitoring broad economic trends as well as corporate and legislative developments, but there can be no assurance that it will be successful in doing so. Credit ratings of debt securities provided by rating agencies indicate a measure of the safety of principal and interest payments, not market value risk. The rating of an issuer is a rating agency's view of past and future potential developments related to the issuer and may not necessarily reflect actual outcomes. There can be a lag between corporate developments and the time a rating is assigned and updated.

**Changing Fixed Income Market Conditions.** Following the financial crisis that began in 2007, the U.S. government and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (the "Federal Reserve") as well as certain foreign governments and central banks, took steps to support the financial markets, including by keeping interest rates at historically low levels and by purchasing large quantities of securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government, its agencies or instrumentalities on the open market ("Quantitative Easing"). Similar steps were taken again in 2020 in an effort to support the economy during the coronavirus pandemic. In 2022, the Federal Reserve began to unwind its balance sheet by not replacing existing bond holdings as they mature ("Quantitative Tightening"). Also in 2022, the Federal Reserve began raising the federal funds rate in an effort to fight inflation. Such policy changes may expose fixed-income and related markets to heightened volatility and may reduce liquidity for certain Fund investments, which could cause the value of the Funds' investments and share price to decline. If a Fund invests in derivatives tied to fixed income markets it may be more substantially exposed to these risks than a fund that does not invest in derivatives. Government interventions such as those described above may not work as intended, particularly if the efforts are perceived by investors as being unlikely to achieve the desired results.

Bond markets have consistently grown over the past three decades while the capacity for traditional dealer counterparties to engage in fixed income trading has not kept pace and in some cases has decreased. As a result, dealer inventories of corporate bonds, which provide a core indication of the ability of financial intermediaries to "make markets," are at or near historic lows in relation to market size. Because market makers provide stability to a market through their intermediary services, the significant reduction in dealer inventories could potentially lead to decreased liquidity and increased volatility in the fixed income markets. Such issues may be exacerbated during periods of economic uncertainty.

**Bond Ratings.** Bond rating agencies may assign modifiers (such as +/-) to ratings categories to signify the relative position of a credit within the rating category. Investment policies that are based on ratings categories should be read to include any security within that category, without considering the modifier. Please refer to Appendix A for more information about credit ratings.

### **Government Obligations**

The Funds may invest in U.S. government obligations. Such obligations include Treasury bills, certificates of indebtedness, notes and bonds. U.S. government obligations include securities issued or guaranteed as to principal and interest by the U.S. government, its agencies or instrumentalities. Treasury bills, the most frequently issued marketable government securities, have a maturity of up to one year and are issued on a discount basis. U.S. government obligations include securities issued or guaranteed by government-sponsored enterprises.

Payment of principal and interest on U.S. government obligations may be backed by the full faith and credit of the United States or may be backed solely by the issuing or guaranteeing agency or instrumentality itself. In the latter case, the investor must look principally to the agency or instrumentality issuing or guaranteeing the obligation for ultimate repayment, which agency or instrumentality may be privately owned. There can be no assurance that the U.S. government would provide financial support to its agencies or instrumentalities, including government-sponsored enterprises, where it is not obligated to do so. In addition, U.S. government obligations are subject to fluctuations in market value due to fluctuations in market interest rates. As a general matter, the value of debt instruments, including U.S. government obligations, declines when market interest rates increase and rises when market interest rates decrease. Certain types of U.S. government obligations are subject to fluctuations in yield or value due to their structure or contract terms.

### **Mortgage-Backed Securities**

The Funds may invest in mortgage-backed securities and derivative mortgage-backed securities and may also invest in “principal only” and “interest only” components. Mortgage-backed securities are securities that directly or indirectly represent a participation in, or are secured by and payable from, mortgage loans on real property. As with other debt securities, mortgage-backed securities are subject to credit risk and interest rate risk. However, the yield and maturity characteristics of mortgage-backed securities differ from traditional debt securities. A major difference is that the principal amount of the obligations may normally be prepaid at any time because the underlying assets (i.e., loans) generally may be prepaid at any time. The relationship between prepayments and interest rates may give some mortgage-backed securities less potential for growth in value than conventional fixed-income securities with comparable maturities. In addition, in periods of falling interest rates, the rate of prepayments tends to increase. During such periods, the reinvestment of prepayment proceeds by the Fund will generally be at lower rates than the rates that were carried by the obligations that have been prepaid. If interest rates rise, borrowers may prepay mortgages more slowly than originally expected. This may further reduce the market value of mortgage-backed securities and lengthen their durations. Because of these and other reasons, a mortgage-backed security’s total return, maturity and duration may be difficult to predict precisely.

Mortgage-backed securities come in different classes that have different risks. Junior classes of mortgage-backed securities are designed to protect the senior class investors against losses on the underlying mortgage loans by taking the first loss if there are liquidations among the underlying loans. Junior classes generally receive principal and interest payments only after all required payments have been made to more senior classes. If a Fund invests in junior classes of mortgage-related securities, it may not be able to recover all of its investment in the securities it purchases. In addition, if the underlying mortgage portfolio has been overvalued, or if mortgage values subsequently decline, a Fund may suffer significant losses. Investments in mortgage-backed securities involve the risks of interruptions in the payment of interest and principal (delinquency) and the potential for loss of principal if the property underlying the security is sold as a result of foreclosure on the mortgage (default). These risks include the risks associated with direct ownership of real estate, such as the effects of general and local economic conditions on real estate values, the conditions of specific industry segments, the ability of tenants to make lease payments and the ability of a property to attract and retain tenants, which in turn may be affected by local market conditions such as oversupply of space or a reduction of available space, the ability of the owner to provide adequate maintenance and insurance, energy costs, government regulations with respect to environmental, zoning, rent control and other matters, and real estate and other taxes. If the underlying borrowers cannot pay their mortgage loans, they may default and the lenders may foreclose on the property.

The ability of borrowers to repay mortgage loans underlying mortgage-backed securities will typically depend upon the future availability of financing and the stability of real estate values. For mortgage loans not guaranteed by a government agency or other party, the only remedy of the lender in the event of a default is to foreclose upon the property. If borrowers are not able or willing to pay the principal balance on the loans, there is a good chance that payments on the related mortgage-related securities will not be made. Certain borrowers on underlying mortgages may become subject to bankruptcy proceedings, in which case the value of the mortgage-backed securities may decline.

### **Asset-Backed Securities**

The Funds may invest in asset-backed securities that, through the use of trusts and special purpose vehicles, are securitized with various types of assets, such as automobile receivables, credit card receivables and home-equity loans in pass-through structures similar to the mortgage-related securities described above. In general, the collateral supporting asset-backed securities is of shorter maturity than the collateral supporting mortgage loans and is less likely to experience substantial prepayments. However, asset-backed securities are not backed by any governmental agency. Credit card receivables are generally unsecured, and the debtors are entitled to the protection of a number of state and federal consumer credit laws, many of which give such debtors the right to set off certain amounts owed on the credit cards, thereby reducing the balance due. In addition, some issuers of automobile receivables permit the servicers to retain possession of the underlying obligations. If the servicers were to sell these obligations to another party, there is a risk that the purchaser would acquire an interest superior to that of the holders of the related automobile receivables. The impairment of value of collateral or other assets underlying an asset-based security, such as a result of non-payment of loans or non-performance of other collateral or underlying assets, may reduce the value of such asset-based security and result in losses to the Fund.

### **Agency Obligations**

The Funds may invest in agency obligations, such as obligations of the Export-Import Bank of the United States, Tennessee Valley Authority, Resolution Funding Corporation, Farmers Home Administration, Federal Home Loan Banks, Federal Intermediate Credit Banks, Federal Farm Credit Banks, Federal Land Banks, Federal Housing Administration, Government National Mortgage Association (“GNMA”), commonly known as “Ginnie Mae,” Federal National Mortgage Association (“FNMA”), commonly known as “Fannie Mae,” Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (“FHLMC”), commonly known as “Freddie Mac,” and the Student Loan Marketing Association (“SLMA”). Some, such as those of the Export-Import Bank of the United States, are supported only by the right of the issuer to borrow from the Treasury; others, such as those of the FNMA and FHLMC, are supported by only the discretionary authority of the U.S. government to purchase the agency’s obligations; still others, such as those of the SLMA, are supported only by the credit of the instrumentality. No assurance can be given that the U.S. government would provide financial support to U.S. government-sponsored instrumentalities because they are not obligated by law to do so. As a result, there is a risk that these entities will default on a financial obligation. For instance, in September 2008, at the direction of the U.S. Treasury, FNMA and FHLMC were placed into conservatorship under the Federal Housing Finance Agency (“FHFA”), a newly created independent regulator.

### **Lower-Rated Debt Securities**

The Funds may invest in lower-rated fixed-income securities (commonly known as “junk bonds”). The lower ratings reflect a greater possibility that adverse changes in the financial condition of the issuer or in general economic conditions, or both, or an unanticipated rise in interest rates, may impair the ability of the issuer to make payments of interest and principal. The inability (or perceived inability) of issuers to make timely payment of interest and principal would likely make the values of securities held by the Fund more volatile and could limit the Fund’s ability to sell its securities at prices approximating the values the Fund had placed on such securities. In the absence of a liquid trading market for securities held by it, the Fund at times may be unable to establish the fair value of such securities. Securities ratings are based largely on the issuer’s historical financial condition and the rating agencies’ analysis at the time of rating. Consequently, the rating assigned to any particular security is not necessarily a reflection of the issuer’s current financial condition, which may be better or worse than the rating would indicate. In addition, the rating assigned to a security by Moody’s or S&P (or by any other nationally recognized securities rating agency) does not reflect an assessment of the volatility of the security’s market value or the liquidity of an investment in the security.

Like those of other fixed-income securities, the values of lower-rated securities fluctuate in response to changes in interest rates. A decrease in interest rates will generally result in an increase in the value of the Fund’s fixed-income assets. Conversely, during periods of rising interest rates, the value of the Fund’s fixed-income assets will generally decline. The values of lower-rated securities may often be affected to a greater extent by changes in general economic conditions and business conditions affecting the issuers of such securities and their industries. Negative publicity or investor perceptions may also adversely affect the values of lower-rated securities. Changes by nationally recognized securities rating agencies in their ratings of any fixed-income security and changes in the ability of an issuer to make payments of interest and principal may also affect the value of these investments. Changes in the value of portfolio securities generally will not affect income derived from these securities, but will affect the Fund’s net asset value. The Fund will not necessarily dispose



of a security when its rating is reduced below its rating at the time of purchase. However, the Advisor or Sub-advisor, as applicable, will monitor the investment to determine whether its retention will assist in meeting each Fund's investment objective. Issuers of lower-rated securities are often highly leveraged, so that their ability to service their debt obligations during an economic downturn or during sustained periods of rising interest rates may be impaired. Such issuers may not have more traditional methods of financing available to them and may be unable to repay outstanding obligations at maturity by refinancing.

The risk of loss due to default in payment of interest or repayment of principal by such issuers is significantly greater because such securities frequently are unsecured and subordinated to the prior payment of senior indebtedness. It is possible that, under adverse market or economic conditions or in the event of adverse changes in the financial condition of the issuer, the Fund could find it more difficult to sell these securities when the Advisor or Sub-advisor, as applicable, believes it advisable to do so or may be able to sell the securities only at prices lower than if they were more widely held. Under these circumstances, it may also be more difficult to determine the fair value of such securities for purposes of computing the Fund's net asset value. In order to enforce its rights in the event of a default, the Fund may be required to participate in various legal proceedings or take possession of and manage assets securing the issuer's obligations on such securities. This could increase the Fund's operating expenses and adversely affect the Fund's net asset value. The ability of a holder of a tax-exempt security to enforce the terms of that security in a bankruptcy proceeding may be more limited than would be the case with respect to securities of private issuers. In addition, each Fund's intention to qualify as a "regulated investment company" under the Code may limit the extent to which the Fund may exercise its rights by taking possession of such assets. To the extent a Fund invests in securities in the lower rating categories, the achievement of the Fund's investment objective is more dependent on the Advisor's or Sub-Advisor's, as applicable, investment analysis than would be the case if the Fund were investing in securities in the higher rating categories.

#### **Over-the-Counter Transactions — Fixed Income Securities**

The Funds may enter into over-the-counter ("OTC") transactions involving fixed income securities. OTC transactions differ from exchange-traded transactions in several respects. OTC transactions are transacted directly with dealers and not with a clearing corporation. Without the availability of a clearing corporation, OTC transaction pricing is normally done by reference to information from market makers, which information is carefully monitored by the Advisor or Sub-Advisor and verified in appropriate cases. As OTC transactions are transacted directly with dealers, there is a risk of nonperformance by the dealer as a result of the insolvency of such dealer or otherwise. The Funds intend to enter into OTC transactions only with dealers which agree to, and which are expected to be capable of, entering into closing transactions with the Funds. There is also no assurance that the Funds will be able to liquidate an OTC transaction at any time prior to expiration.

#### **Sovereign Debt Obligations**

The Funds may invest in sovereign debt obligations, which are securities issued or guaranteed by foreign governments, governmental agencies or instrumentalities and political subdivisions, including debt of developing countries. Sovereign debt may be in the form of conventional securities or other types of debt instruments such as loans or loan participations. Sovereign debt of developing countries may involve a high degree of risk, and may be in default or present the risk of default. Governmental entities responsible for repayment of the debt may be unable or unwilling to repay principal and pay interest when due, and may require renegotiation or rescheduling of debt payments. In addition, prospects for repayment of principal and payment of interest may depend on political as well as economic factors. Although some sovereign debt, such as Brady Bonds, is collateralized by U.S. government securities, repayment of principal and payment of interest is not guaranteed by the U.S. government. There is no bankruptcy proceeding by which sovereign debt on which governmental entities have defaulted may be collected in whole or in part.

#### **Zero Coupon, Step Coupon, and Pay-In-Kind Securities**

Zero coupon bonds are securities that make no fixed interest payments but instead are issued and traded at a discount from their face value. They do not entitle the holder to any periodic payment of interest prior to maturity. Step coupon bonds trade at a discount from their face value and pay coupon interest. The coupon rate is low for an initial period and then increases to a higher coupon rate thereafter. The discount from the face amount or par value depends on the time remaining until cash payments begin, prevailing interest rates, liquidity of the security, and the perceived credit quality of the issuer. Pay-in-kind bonds normally give the issuer an option to pay cash at a coupon payment date or give the holder of the security a similar bond with the same coupon rate and a face value equal to the amount of the coupon payment that would have been made.

Generally, the market prices of zero coupon, step coupon, and pay-in-kind securities are more volatile than the prices of securities that pay interest periodically and in cash and are likely to respond to changes in interest rates to a greater degree than other types of debt securities having similar maturities and credit quality.

### **Floating Rate, Inverse Floating Rate and Index Obligations**

The Funds may invest in debt securities with interest payments or maturity values that are not fixed, but float in conjunction with (or inversely to) an underlying index or price. These securities may be backed by sovereign or corporate issuers, or by collateral such as mortgages. The indices and prices upon which such securities can be based include interest rates, currency rates and commodities prices. Floating rate securities pay interest according to a coupon which is reset periodically. The reset mechanism may be formula based, or reflect the passing through of floating interest payments on an underlying collateral pool. Inverse floating rate securities are similar to floating rate securities except that their coupon payments vary inversely with an underlying index by use of a formula. Inverse floating rate securities tend to exhibit greater price volatility than other floating rate securities. Interest rate risk and price volatility on inverse floating rate obligations can be high, especially if leverage is used in the formula. Index securities pay a fixed rate of interest, but have a maturity value that varies by formula, so that when the obligation matures a gain or loss may be realized. The risk of index obligations depends on the volatility of the underlying index, the coupon payment and the maturity of the obligation.

### **BANK LOANS AND LOAN PARTICIPATIONS**

The Funds may invest in bank loans and loan participations. Commercial banks and other financial institutions or institutional investors make corporate loans to companies that need capital to grow or restructure. Borrowers generally pay interest on corporate loans at rates that change in response to changes in market interest rates such as the LIBOR or the prime rates of U.S. banks. As a result, the value of corporate loan investments is generally less exposed to the adverse effects of shifts in market interest rates than investments that pay a fixed rate of interest. However, because the trading market for certain corporate loans may be less developed than the secondary market for bonds and notes, the Fund may experience difficulties in selling its corporate loans. The Fund may make certain corporate loan investments as part of a broader group of lenders (together often referred to as a “syndicate”) that is represented by a leading financial institution (or agent bank). The syndicate’s agent arranges the corporate loans, holds collateral and accepts payments of principal and interest. If the agent develops financial problems or is terminated, the Fund may not recover its investment or recovery may be delayed. Corporate loans are subject to the credit risk of nonpayment of principal or interest. Further, substantial increases in interest rates may cause an increase in loan defaults. Although the loans will generally be fully collateralized at the time of acquisition, the collateral may decline in value, be relatively illiquid or lose all or substantially all of its value subsequent to investment. If a borrower files for protection from its creditors under the U.S. bankruptcy laws, these laws may limit the Fund’s rights to the collateral. In addition, the value of collateral may erode during a bankruptcy case. In the event of a bankruptcy, the holder of a corporate loan may not recover its principal, may experience a long delay in recovering its investment and may not receive interest during the delay. Further, interests in bank loans and loan participations are not considered to be securities and, therefore, are not protected under the federal securities laws, including the 1940 Act. As part of transacting in bank loans the Fund may come into possession of material nonpublic information about a borrower as a result of its investment. Because of prohibitions on trading while in possession of such information, the Fund may be unable to invest or transact in the publicly traded securities of that borrower when it would otherwise be advantageous to do so.

The Funds may also invest in second lien loans (secured loans with a claim on collateral subordinate to a senior lender’s claim on such collateral) and unsecured loans. Holders’ claims under unsecured loans are subordinated to claims of creditors holding secured indebtedness and possibly other classes of creditors holding unsecured debt. Unsecured loans have a greater risk of default than secured loans, particularly during periods of deteriorating economic conditions. Also, since they do not afford the lender recourse to collateral, unsecured loans are subject to greater risk of nonpayment in the event of default than secured loans. Many such loans are relatively illiquid and may be difficult to value.

Some bank loans are subject to the risk that a court, pursuant to fraudulent conveyance or other similar laws, could subordinate the bank loans to presently existing or future indebtedness of the borrower or take other action detrimental to the holders of the bank loans, including, in certain circumstances, invalidating such bank loans or causing interest previously paid to be refunded to the borrower. If interest were required to be refunded, it could negatively affect Fund performance.

Indebtedness of companies whose creditworthiness is poor involves substantially greater risks and may be highly speculative. Some companies may never pay off their indebtedness or pay only a small fraction of the amount owed. Consequently, when investing in indebtedness of companies with poor credit, the Fund bears a substantial risk of losing the entire amount invested.

Investments in bank loans through a direct assignment of the financial institution's interest with respect to the bank loan may involve additional risks. For example, if a secured bank loan is foreclosed, the Fund could become part owner of any collateral, and would bear the costs and liabilities associated with owning and disposing of the collateral. In addition, it is conceivable that under emerging legal theories of lender liability, the Fund could be held liable as a co-lender.

Bank loans may be structured to include both term loans, which are generally fully funded at the time of investment, and revolving credit facilities, which would require the Fund to make additional investments in the bank loans as required under the terms of the credit facility at the borrower's demand.

A financial institution's employment as agent bank may be terminated in the event that it fails to observe a requisite standard of care or becomes insolvent. A successor agent bank would generally be appointed to replace the terminated agent bank, and assets held by the agent bank under the loan agreement would remain available to the holders of such indebtedness. However, if assets held by the agent bank for the benefit of the Fund were determined to be subject to the claims of the agent bank's general creditors, the Fund may incur certain costs and delays in realizing payments on a bank loan or loan participation and could suffer a loss of principal and/or interest.

The Funds generally will treat the corporate borrower as the "issuer" of indebtedness held by the Fund. In the case of loan participations where a bank or other lending institution serves as a financial intermediary between the Fund and the corporate borrower, if the participation does not shift to the Fund the direct debtor-creditor relationship with the corporate borrower, SEC interpretations require the Fund to treat both the lending bank or other lending institution and the corporate borrower as "issuers".

#### **COLLATERALIZED LOAN OBLIGATIONS**

The Funds may invest in collateralized loan obligations ("CLOs"). A CLO is a trust typically collateralized by a pool of loans, which may include, among others, domestic and foreign senior secured loans, senior unsecured loans, and subordinate corporate loans, including loans that may be rated below investment grade or equivalent unrated loans. The loans generate cash flow that is allocated among one or more classes of securities ("tranches") that vary in risk and yield. The most senior tranche has the best credit quality and the lowest yield compared to the other tranches. The equity tranche has the highest potential yield but also has the greatest risk, as it bears the bulk of defaults from the underlying loans and helps to protect the more senior tranches from risk of these defaults. However, despite the protection from the equity and other more junior tranches, more senior tranches can experience substantial losses due to actual defaults and decreased market value due to collateral default and disappearance of protecting tranches, market anticipation of defaults, as well as aversion to CLO securities as a class.

Normally, CLOs are privately offered and sold and are not registered under state or federal securities laws. Therefore, investments in CLOs may be characterized by the Fund as illiquid securities. However, an active dealer market may exist for CLOs allowing a CLO to qualify for transactions pursuant to Rule 144A under the Securities Act and to be deemed liquid.

The riskiness of investing in CLOs depends largely on the quality and type of the collateral loans and the tranche of the CLO in which the Fund invests. In addition to the normal risks associated with fixed-income securities (such as interest rate risk and credit risk) and the risks associated with investing in CDOs, CLOs carry additional risks including that interest on certain tranches of a CLO may be paid in-kind (meaning that unpaid interest is effectively added to principal), which involves continued exposure to default risk with respect to such payments. Certain CLOs may receive credit enhancement in the form of a senior-subordinate structure, over-collateralization or bond insurance, but such enhancement may not always be present and may fail to protect the Fund against the risk of loss due to defaults on the collateral. Certain CLOs may not hold loans directly, but rather, use derivatives such as swaps to create "synthetic" exposure to the collateral pool of loans. Such CLOs entail the risks of derivative instruments.

## **FOREIGN INVESTMENTS**

The Funds may make foreign investments. Investments in the securities of foreign issuers and other non-U.S. investments may involve risks in addition to those normally associated with investments in the securities of U.S. issuers or other U.S. investments. All foreign investments are subject to risks of foreign political and economic instability, adverse movements in foreign exchange rates, and the imposition or tightening of exchange controls and limitations on the repatriation of foreign capital. Other risks stem from potential changes in governmental attitude or policy toward private investment, which in turn raises the risk of nationalization, increased taxation or confiscation of foreign investors' assets. Additionally, the imposition of sanctions, trade restrictions (including tariffs) and other government restrictions by the United States and/or other governments may adversely affect the values of the Fund's foreign investments.

The financial problems in global economies over the past several years, including the European sovereign debt crisis, may continue to cause high volatility in global financial markets. In addition, global economies are increasingly interconnected, which increases the possibilities that conditions in one country or region might adversely impact a different country or region. The severity or duration of these conditions may also be affected if one or more countries leave the Euro currency or by other policy changes made by governments or quasi-governmental organizations.

Additional non-U.S. taxes and expenses may also adversely affect the Funds' performance, including foreign withholding taxes on foreign securities' dividends. Brokerage commissions and other transaction costs on foreign securities exchanges are generally higher than in the United States. Foreign companies may be subject to different accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards. To the extent foreign securities held by the Funds are not registered with the SEC or with any other U.S. regulator, the issuers thereof will not be subject to the reporting requirements of the SEC or any other U.S. regulator. Accordingly, less information may be available about foreign companies and other investments than is generally available on issuers of comparable securities and other investments in the United States. Foreign securities and other investments may also trade less frequently and with lower volume and may exhibit greater price volatility than U.S. securities and other investments.

Changes in foreign exchange rates will affect the value in U.S. dollars of any foreign currency-denominated securities and other investments held by the Funds. Exchange rates are influenced generally by the forces of supply and demand in the foreign currency markets and by numerous other political and economic events occurring outside the United States, many of which may be difficult, if not impossible, to predict.

Income from any foreign securities and other investments will be received and realized in foreign currencies, and the Funds are required to compute and distribute income in U.S. dollars. Accordingly, a decline in the value of a particular foreign currency against the U.S. dollar occurring after the Funds' income has been earned and computed in U.S. dollars may require the Funds to liquidate portfolio securities or other investments to acquire sufficient U.S. dollars to make a distribution. Similarly, if the exchange rate declines between the time the Funds incurs expenses in U.S. dollars and the time such expenses are paid, the Funds may be required to liquidate additional portfolio securities or other investments to purchase the U.S. dollars required to meet such expenses.

The Funds may purchase foreign bank obligations. In addition to the risks described above that are generally applicable to foreign investments, the investments that the Funds makes in obligations of foreign banks, branches or subsidiaries may involve further risks, including differences between foreign banks and U.S. banks in applicable accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards, and the possible establishment of exchange controls or other foreign government laws or restrictions applicable to the payment of certificates of deposit or time deposits that may affect adversely the payment of principal and interest on the securities and other investments held by the Funds.

## **Emerging Markets**

The Funds may invest in companies organized or doing substantial business in emerging market countries or developing countries as defined by the World Bank, International Financial Corporation, or the Morgan Stanley Capital International (MSCI) emerging market indices or other comparable indices. Investing in emerging markets involves additional risks and special considerations not typically associated with investing in other more established economies or markets. Such risks may include (i) increased risk of nationalization or expropriation of assets or confiscatory taxation; (ii) greater social, economic and political uncertainty, including war; (iii) higher dependence on exports and the corresponding importance of international trade; (iv) greater volatility, less liquidity and smaller capitalization of markets; (v) greater volatility in

currency exchange rates; (vi) greater risk of inflation; (vii) greater controls on foreign investment and limitations on realization of investments, repatriation of invested capital and on the ability to exchange local currencies for U.S. dollars; (viii) increased likelihood of governmental involvement in and control over the economy; (ix) governmental decisions to cease support of economic reform programs or to impose centrally planned economies; (x) differences in regulatory, accounting, auditing, and financial reporting and recordkeeping standards, which may result in the unavailability of material information about issuers; (xi) less extensive regulation of the markets; (xii) longer settlement periods for transactions and less reliable clearance and custody arrangements; (xiii) less developed corporate laws regarding fiduciary duties of officers and directors and the protection of investors; (xiv) certain considerations regarding the maintenance of the Fund's securities with local brokers and securities depositories and (xv) the imposition of withholding or other taxes on dividends, interest, capital gains, other income or gross sale or disposition proceeds.

Repatriation of investment income, assets and the proceeds of sales by foreign investors may require governmental registration and/or approval in some emerging market countries. The Fund could be adversely affected by delays in or a refusal to grant any required governmental registration or approval for such repatriation, or by withholding taxes imposed by emerging market countries on interest or dividends paid on securities held by the Fund or gains from the disposition of such securities.

In emerging markets, there is often less government supervision and regulation of business and industry practices, stock exchanges, over-the-counter markets, brokers, dealers, counterparties and issuers than in other more established markets. The Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB"), which regulates auditors of U.S. public companies, for example, may be unable to inspect audit work and practices in certain countries. The PCAOB's limited ability to oversee the operations of accounting firms in such countries would mean that inaccurate or incomplete financial records of an issuer's operations may not be detected, which could negatively impact a Fund's investments in such companies. Any regulatory supervision that is in place may be subject to manipulation or control. Some emerging market countries do not have mature legal systems comparable to those of more developed countries. Moreover, the process of legal and regulatory reform may not be proceeding at the same pace as market developments, which could result in investment risk. Legislation to safeguard the rights of private ownership may not yet be in place in certain areas, and there may be the risk of conflict among local, regional and national requirements. In certain cases, the laws and regulations governing investments in securities may not exist or may be subject to inconsistent or arbitrary appreciation or interpretation. Both the independence of judicial systems and their immunity from economic, political or nationalistic influences remain largely untested in many countries. It may also be difficult or impossible for the Fund to pursue legal remedies or to obtain and enforce judgments in local courts.

Many Chinese companies have created variable interest entities ("VIEs") as a means to circumvent limits on foreign ownership of equity in Chinese companies. Investments in companies that use a VIE structure may pose additional risks because the investment is made through an intermediary entity that exerts control of the underlying operating business through contractual means rather than equity ownership and, as a result, may limit the rights of an investor. Although VIEs are a longstanding industry practice and well known to officials and regulators in China, VIE structures are not formally recognized under Chinese law. Investors face uncertainty about future actions by the government of China that could significantly affect an operating company's financial performance and the enforceability of the VIE's contractual arrangements. It is uncertain whether Chinese officials or regulators will withdraw their implicit acceptance of the VIE structure, or whether any new laws, rules, or regulations relating to VIE structures will be adopted or, if adopted, what impact they would have on the interests of foreign shareholders. Under extreme circumstances, China might prohibit the existence of VIEs, or sever their ability to transmit economic and governance rights to foreign individuals and entities; if so, the market value of the Funds' associated portfolio holdings would likely suffer significant, detrimental, and possibly permanent effects, which could result in substantial investment losses.

There may also be restrictions on imports from certain countries, such as Russia, and dealings with certain state-sponsored entities. For example, following Russia's large-scale invasion of Ukraine, the President of the United States signed an Executive Order in February 2022 prohibiting U.S. persons from entering transactions with the Central Bank of Russia and Executive Orders in March 2022 prohibiting U.S. persons from importing oil and gas from Russia as well as other popular Russian exports, such as diamonds, seafood and vodka. There may also be restrictions on investments in Chinese companies. For example, the President of the United States signed an Executive Order in June 2021 affirming and expanding the U.S. policy prohibiting U.S. persons from purchasing or investing in publicly-traded securities of

companies identified by the U.S. Government as “Chinese Military-Industrial Complex Companies.” The list of such companies can change from time to time, and as a result of forced selling or an inability to participate in an investment the Advisor otherwise believes is attractive, the Fund may incur losses. Any of these factors may adversely affect a Fund’s performance or the Fund’s ability to pursue its investment objective.

### **Foreign Currency Transactions**

The Funds may conduct foreign currency exchange transactions either on a spot, i.e., cash, basis at the prevailing rate in the foreign exchange market. Foreign currency transactions are generally used to obtain foreign currencies to settle securities transactions or to exchange one currency for another. They can also be used as a hedge to protect assets against adverse changes in foreign currency exchange rates or regulations. When a Fund uses foreign currency exchanges as a hedge, it may also limit potential gain that could result from an increase in the value of such currencies. Currency exchange rates may be volatile and the Fund may be affected either favorably or unfavorably by fluctuations in the relative rates of exchange between the currencies of different nations, market or economic downswings, or other relevant factors, such as the actions of governments or central banks, the imposition of currency controls, and speculation. Foreign currency hedging transactions are used to protect against foreign currency exchange rate risks.

There is no systematic reporting of last sale information for foreign currencies, and there is no regulatory requirement that quotations available through dealers or other market sources be firm or revised on a timely basis. Quotation information available is generally representative of very large transactions in the interbank market. The interbank market in foreign currencies is a global around-the-clock market. Since foreign currency transactions occurring in the interbank market involve substantially larger amounts than those that may be involved in the use of foreign currency options, the Fund may be disadvantaged by having to deal in an odd lot market (generally consisting of transactions of less than \$1 million) for the underlying foreign currencies at prices that are less favorable than for round lots.

### **Depository Receipts**

The Funds may invest in depository receipts. American Depository Receipts (“ADRs”) are negotiable receipts issued by a U.S. bank or trust company that evidence ownership of securities in a foreign company which have been deposited with such bank or trust company’s office or agent in a foreign country. European Depository Receipts (“EDRs”) are negotiable certificates held in the bank of one country representing a specific number of shares of a stock traded on an exchange of another country. Global Depository Receipts (“GDRs”) are negotiable certificates held in the bank of one country representing a specific number of shares of a stock traded on an exchange of another country. Canadian Depository Receipts (“CDRs”) are negotiable receipts issued by a Canadian bank or trust company that evidence ownership of securities in a foreign company which have been deposited with such bank or trust company’s office or agent in a foreign country.

Investing in ADRs, EDRs, GDRs, and CDRs presents risks that may not be equal to the risk inherent in holding the equivalent shares of the same companies that are traded in the local markets even though the Fund will purchase, sell and be paid dividends on ADRs in U.S. dollars. These risks include fluctuations in currency exchange rates, which are affected by international balances of payments and other economic and financial conditions; government intervention; speculation; and other factors. With respect to certain foreign countries, there is the possibility of expropriation or nationalization of assets, confiscatory taxation, political and social upheaval, and economic instability. The Funds may be required to pay foreign withholding or other taxes on certain ADRs, EDRs, GDRs, or CDRs that it owns, but investors may or may not be able to deduct their pro-rata share of such taxes in computing their taxable income, or take such shares as a credit against their U.S. federal income tax. See “Federal Income Tax Matters.” ADRs, EDRs, GDRs, and CDRs may be sponsored by the foreign issuer or may be unsponsored. Unsponsored ADRs, EDRs, GDRs, and CDRs are organized independently and without the cooperation of the foreign issuer of the underlying securities. Unsponsored ADRs, EDRs, GDRs, and CDRs are offered by companies which are not prepared to meet either the reporting or accounting standards of the United States. While readily exchangeable with stock in local markets, unsponsored ADRs, EDRs, GDRs, and CDRs may be less liquid than sponsored ADRs, EDRs, GDRs, and CDRs. Additionally, there generally is less publicly available information with respect to unsponsored ADRs, EDRs, GDRs, and CDRs.

## **DEVELOPMENTS IN THE CHINA REGION**

After nearly 30 years of unprecedented growth, the People's Republic of China now faces a slowing economy. The real estate market, which many observers believed to be inflated, has begun to decline. Local governments, which had borrowed heavily to bolster growth, face high debt burdens and limited revenue sources. As a result, demand for Chinese exports by the United States and countries in Europe, and demands for Chinese imports from such countries, may weaken due to the effects of more limited economic growth. Additionally, Chinese actions to lay claim to disputed islands have caused relations with China's regional trading partners to suffer, and could cause further disruption to regional and international trade. From time to time, China has experienced outbreaks of infectious illnesses, and the country may be subject to other public health threats, infectious illnesses, diseases or similar issues in the future. Any spread of an infectious illness, public health threat or similar issue could reduce consumer demand or economic output, result in market closures, travel restrictions or quarantines, and generally have a significant impact on the Chinese economy. In the long run, China's ability to develop and sustain a credible legal, regulatory, monetary, and socioeconomic system could influence the course of outside investment.

## **EUROPE — RECENT EVENTS**

A number of countries in Europe have experienced severe economic and financial difficulties. Many non-governmental issuers, and even certain governments, have defaulted on, or been forced to restructure, their debts; many other issuers have faced difficulties obtaining credit or refinancing existing obligations; financial institutions have in many cases required government or central bank support, have needed to raise capital, and/or have been impaired in their ability to extend credit; and financial markets in Europe and elsewhere have experienced extreme volatility and declines in asset values and liquidity. These difficulties may continue, worsen or spread within or outside Europe. Responses to the financial problems by European governments, central banks and others, including austerity measures and reforms, may not work, may result in social unrest and may limit future growth and economic recovery or have other unintended consequences. Further defaults or restructurings by governments and others of their debt could have additional adverse effects on economies, financial markets and asset valuations around the world.

The European Union (the "EU") currently faces major issues involving its membership, structure, procedures and policies, including the successful political, economic and social integration of new member states, the EU's resettlement and distribution of refugees, and resolution of the EU's problematic fiscal and democratic accountability. In addition, one or more countries may abandon the Euro, the common currency of the EU, and/or withdraw from the EU. The impact of these actions, especially if they occur in a disorderly fashion, is not clear but could be significant and far-reaching.

**United Kingdom Exit from the EU.** On January 31, 2020, the United Kingdom (the "UK") formally withdrew from the EU (commonly referred to as "Brexit") and, after a transition period, left the EU single market and customs union under the terms of a new trade agreement, effective January 1, 2021. The agreement governs the new relationship between the UK and EU with respect to trading goods and services, but critical aspects of the relationship remain unresolved and subject to further negotiation and agreement. The political, regulatory, and economic consequences of Brexit are uncertain, and the ultimate ramifications may not be known for some time. The effects of Brexit on the UK and EU economies and the broader global economy could be significant, resulting in negative impacts, such as business and trade disruptions, increased volatility and illiquidity, and potentially lower economic growth of markets in the UK, EU, and globally, which could negatively impact the value of the Fund's investments. Brexit could also lead to legal uncertainty and politically divergent national laws and regulations while the new relationship between the UK and EU is further defined and the UK determines which EU laws to replace or replicate. Additionally, depreciation of the British pound sterling and/or the euro in relation to the U.S. dollar following Brexit could adversely affect Fund investments denominated in the British pound sterling and/or the euro, regardless of the performance of the investment.

**Russia's Invasion of Ukraine.** Russia has attempted to assert its influence in Eastern Europe in the recent past through economic and military measures, including military incursions into Georgia in 2008 and eastern Ukraine in 2014, heightening geopolitical risk in the region and tensions with the West. On February 24, 2022, Russia initiated a large-scale invasion of Ukraine resulting in the displacement of millions of Ukrainians from their homes, a substantial loss of life, and the widespread destruction of property and infrastructure throughout Ukraine. In response to Russia's invasion of Ukraine, the governments of the United States, the European Union, the United Kingdom, and many other nations joined together to impose heavy economic sanctions on certain Russian individuals, including its political leaders, as well as Russian corporate and banking entities and other Russian industries and businesses. The sanctions restrict companies from doing business with Russia and Russian companies, prohibit transactions with the Russian central bank and other key Russian financial institutions and entities, ban Russian airlines and ships from using many

other countries' airspace and ports, respectively, and place a freeze on certain Russian assets. The sanctions also removed some Russian banks from the Society for Worldwide Interbank Financial Telecommunications (SWIFT), the electronic network that connects banks globally to facilitate cross-border payments. In addition, the United States has banned oil and other energy imports from Russia, and the United Kingdom made a commitment to phase out oil imports from Russia by the end of 2022. The United States, the European Union, the United Kingdom, and their global allies may impose additional sanctions or other intergovernmental actions against Russia in the future, but Russia may respond in kind by imposing retaliatory economic sanctions or countermeasures. The extent and duration of the war in Ukraine and the longevity and severity of sanctions remain unknown, but they could have a significant adverse impact on the European economy as well as the price and availability of certain commodities, including oil and natural gas, throughout the world. Further, an escalation of the military conflict beyond Ukraine's borders could result in significant, long-lasting damage to the economies of Eastern and Western Europe as well as the global economy.

**General.** Whether or not the Fund invests in securities of issuers located in Europe or with significant exposure to European issuers or countries, these events could negatively affect the value and liquidity of the Fund's investments due to the interconnected nature of the global economy and capital markets. The Fund may also be susceptible to these events to the extent that the Fund invests in municipal obligations with credit support by non-U.S. financial institutions.

### **TEMPORARY INVESTMENTS**

The Funds may take temporary defensive measures that are inconsistent with a Fund's normal fundamental or non-fundamental investment policies and strategies in response to adverse market, economic, political, or other conditions as determined by the Sub-Advisor. Such measures could include, but are not limited to, investments in (1) highly liquid short-term fixed income securities issued by or on behalf of municipal or corporate issuers, obligations of the U.S. government and its agencies, commercial paper, and bank certificates of deposit; (2) repurchase agreements involving any such securities; and (3) other money market instruments. A Fund also may invest in shares of money market mutual funds to the extent permitted under applicable law. Money market mutual funds are investment companies, and the investments in those companies by a Fund are in some cases subject to certain fundamental investment restrictions. As a shareholder in a mutual fund, a Fund will bear its ratable share of its expenses, including management fees, and will remain subject to payment of the fees to the Sub-Advisor, with respect to assets so invested. A Fund may not achieve its investment objectives during temporary defensive periods.

### **DERIVATIVES**

Each Fund may utilize a variety of derivatives contracts, such as futures, options, swaps and forward contracts, both for investment purposes and for hedging purposes. Hedging involves special risks including the possible default by the other party to the transaction, illiquidity and, to the extent the Advisor's assessment of certain market movements is incorrect, the risk that the use of hedging could result in losses greater than if hedging had not been used. Nonetheless, with respect to certain investment positions, a Fund may not be sufficiently hedged against market fluctuations, in which case an investment position could result in a loss greater than if the Advisor had been sufficiently hedged with respect to such position.

The Advisor or Sub-Advisors will not, in general, attempt to hedge all market or other risks inherent in a Fund's positions, and may hedge certain risks, if at all, only partially. Specifically, the Advisor or Sub-Advisors may choose not, or may determine that it is economically unattractive, to hedge certain risks, either in respect of particular positions or in respect of a Fund's overall portfolio. Moreover, it should be noted that a Fund's portfolio always will be exposed to unidentified systematic risk factors and to certain risks that cannot be completely hedged, such as credit risk (relating both to particular securities and to counterparties). A Fund's portfolio composition may result in various directional market risks remaining unhedged, although the Advisor or Sub-Advisors may rely on diversification to control such risks to the extent that the Advisor or Sub-Advisors believes it is desirable to do so.

The regulation of derivatives markets in the United States is a rapidly changing area of law and is subject to modification by government and judicial action. In particular, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (the "Dodd-Frank Act"), signed into law in 2010, granted significant authority to the SEC and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (the "CFTC") to impose comprehensive regulations on the over-the-counter and cleared derivatives markets. These regulations include, but are not limited to, mandatory clearing of certain derivatives and requirements relating to disclosure, margin and trade reporting. New regulations could adversely affect the value, availability and performance of certain derivative instruments, may make them more costly, and may limit or restrict their use by the Funds.



In October 2020, the SEC adopted Rule 18f-4 under the 1940 Act (the “Derivatives Rule”), which provides an updated, comprehensive framework for registered investment companies’ use of derivatives. The Derivatives Rule requires investment companies that enter into derivatives transactions and certain other transactions that create future payment or delivery obligations to, among other things, (i) comply with a value-at-risk (“VaR”) leverage limit, and (ii) adopt and implement a comprehensive written derivatives risk management program. These and other requirements apply unless the Fund qualifies as a “limited derivatives user,” which the Derivatives Rule defines as a fund that limits its derivatives exposure to 10% of its net assets. In connection with the adoption of the Derivatives Rule, the Fund is no longer required to comply with the asset segregation framework arising from prior SEC guidance for covering certain derivative instruments and related transactions. Complying with the Derivatives Rule may increase the cost of the Fund’s investments and cost of doing business, which could adversely affect investors. The Derivatives Rule may not be effective to limit a Fund’s risk of loss. In particular, measurements of VaR rely on historical data and may not accurately measure the degree of risk reflected in a Fund’s derivatives or other investments. Other potentially adverse regulatory obligations can develop suddenly and without notice.

Certain additional risk factors related to derivatives are discussed below:

**Derivatives Risk.** Under recently adopted rules by the CFTC, transactions in some types of interest rate swaps and index credit default swaps on North American and European indices will be required to be cleared. In a cleared derivatives transaction, a Fund’s counterparty is a clearing house (such as CME Clearing, ICE Clearing or LCH.Clearnet), rather than a bank or broker. Since a Fund is not a member of clearing houses and only members of a clearing house can participate directly in the clearing house, a Fund will hold cleared derivatives through accounts at clearing members, who are futures commission merchants that are members of the clearing houses and who have the appropriate regulatory approvals to engage in swap transactions. A Fund will make and receive payments owed under cleared derivatives transactions (including margin payments) through its accounts at clearing members. Clearing members guarantee performance of their clients’ obligations to the clearing house. In contrast to bilateral derivatives transactions, following a period of advance notice to a Fund, clearing members generally can require termination of existing cleared derivatives transactions at any time and increases in margin above the margin that it required at the beginning of a transaction. Clearing houses also have broad rights to increase margin requirements for existing transactions and to terminate transactions. Any such increase or termination could interfere with the ability of a Fund to pursue its investment strategy. Also, a Fund is subject to execution risk if it enters into a derivatives transaction that is required to be cleared (or that the Advisor expects to be cleared), and no clearing member is willing or able to clear the transaction on a Fund’s behalf. While the documentation in place between a Fund and its clearing members generally provides that the clearing members will accept for clearing all transactions submitted for clearing that are within credit limits specified by the clearing members in advance, a Fund could be subject to this execution risk if a Fund submits for clearing transactions that exceed such credit limits, if the clearing house does not accept the transactions for clearing, or if the clearing members do not comply with their agreement to clear such transactions. In that case, the transaction might have to be terminated, and a Fund could lose some or all of the benefit of any increase in the value of the transaction after the time of the transaction. In addition, new regulations could, among other things, restrict a Fund’s ability to engage in, or increase the cost to a Fund of, derivatives transactions, for example, by making some types of derivatives no longer available to a Fund or increasing margin or capital requirements. If a Fund is not able to enter into a particular derivatives transaction, a Fund’s investment performance and risk profile could be adversely affected as a result.

**Counterparty Risk.** Counterparty risk with respect to OTC derivatives may be affected by new regulations promulgated by the CFTC and SEC affecting the derivatives market. As described under “Derivatives Risk” above, some derivatives transactions will be required to be cleared, and a party to a cleared derivatives transaction is subject to the credit risk of the clearing house and the clearing member through which it holds its cleared position, rather than the credit risk of its original counterparty to the derivative transaction. Clearing members are required to segregate all funds received from customers with respect to cleared derivatives transactions from the clearing member’s proprietary assets. However, all funds and other property received by a clearing broker from its customers are generally held by the clearing broker on a commingled basis in an omnibus account, which may also invest those funds in certain instruments permitted under the applicable regulations. The assets of a Fund might not be fully protected in the event of the bankruptcy of a Fund’s clearing member because a Fund would be limited to recovering only a pro rata share of all available funds segregated on behalf of the clearing broker’s customers for a relevant account class. Also, the clearing member transfers to the clearing house the amount of margin required by the clearing house for cleared derivatives transactions, which amounts are generally held in an omnibus account at the clearing house for all customers of the clearing member. For commodities

futures positions, the clearing house may use all of the collateral held in the clearing member's omnibus account to meet a loss in that account, without regard to which customer in fact supplied that collateral. Accordingly, in addition to bearing the credit risk of its clearing member, each customer to a futures transaction also bears "fellow customer" risk from other customers of the clearing member. However, with respect to cleared swaps positions, recent regulations promulgated by the CFTC require that the clearing member notify the clearing house of the amount of initial margin provided by the clearing member to the clearing house that is attributable to each customer. Because margin in respect of cleared swaps must be earmarked for specific clearing member customers, the clearing house may not use the collateral of one customer to cover the obligations of another customer. However, if the clearing member does not provide accurate reporting, a Fund is subject to the risk that a clearing house will use a Fund's assets held in an omnibus account at the clearing house to satisfy payment obligations of a defaulting customer of the clearing member to the clearing house. In addition, a clearing member may generally choose to provide to the clearing house the net amount of variation margin required for cleared swaps for all of the clearing member's customers in the aggregate, rather than the gross amount of each customer. A Fund is therefore subject to the risk that a clearing house will not make variation margin payments owed to a Fund if another customer of the clearing member has suffered a loss and is in default.

### **Options on Securities and Securities Indices**

A Fund may invest in options on securities and stock indices. A call option entitles the purchaser, in return for the premium paid, to purchase specified securities at a specified price during the option period. A put option entitles the purchaser, in return for the premium paid, to sell specified securities during the option period. The Funds may invest in both European-style or American-style options. A European-style option is only exercisable immediately prior to its expiration. American-style options are exercisable at any time prior to the expiration date of the option.

**Writing Call Options.** The Fund may write covered call options. A call option is "covered" if the Fund owns the security underlying the call or has an absolute right to acquire the security without additional cash consideration or, if additional cash consideration is required, cash or cash equivalents in such amounts as held in a segregated account by the Fund's custodian. The writer of a call option receives a premium and gives the purchaser the right to buy the security underlying the option at the exercise price. The writer has the obligation upon exercise of the option to deliver the underlying security against payment of the exercise price during the option period. If the writer of an exchange-traded option wishes to terminate his obligation, he may effect a "closing purchase transaction." This is accomplished by buying an option of the same series as the option previously written. A writer may not effect a closing purchase transaction after it has been notified of the exercise of an option.

Effecting a closing transaction in a written call option will permit the Fund to write another call option on the underlying security with either a different exercise price, expiration date or both. Also, effecting a closing transaction will permit the cash or proceeds from the concurrent sale of any securities subject to the option to be used for other investments of the Fund. If the Fund desires to sell a particular security from its portfolio on which it has written a call option, it will effect a closing transaction prior to or concurrent with the sale of the security.

A Fund will realize a gain from a closing transaction if the cost of the closing transaction is less than the premium received from writing the option or if the proceeds from the closing transaction are more than the premium paid to purchase the option. The Funds will realize a loss from a closing transaction if the cost of the closing transaction is more than the premium received from writing the option or if the proceeds from the closing transaction are less than the premium paid to purchase the option. However, because increases in the market price of a call option will generally reflect increases in the market price of the underlying security, any loss to the Funds resulting from the repurchase of a call option is likely to be offset in whole or in part by appreciation of the underlying security owned by the Funds.

If a Fund were assigned an exercise notice on a call it has written, it would be required to liquidate portfolio securities in order to satisfy the exercise, unless it has other liquid assets that are sufficient to satisfy the exercise of the call. If a Fund has written a call, there is also a risk that the market may decline between the time the Fund has a call exercised against it, at a price which is fixed as of the closing level of the index on the date of exercise, and the time it is able to sell securities in its portfolio.

In addition to covered call options, a Fund may write uncovered (or "naked") call options on securities, including shares of exchange-traded funds ("ETFs"), and indices.

**Writing Covered Index Call Options.** The Funds may sell index call options. The Funds may also execute a closing purchase transaction with respect to the option it has sold and then sell another option with either a different exercise price and/or expiration date. A Fund's objective in entering into such closing transactions is to increase option premium income, to limit losses or to protect anticipated gains in the underlying stocks. The cost of a closing transaction, while reducing the premium income realized from the sale of the option, should be offset, at least in part, by the appreciation in the value of the underlying index, and by the opportunity to realize additional premium income from selling a new option.

When a Fund sells an index call option, it does not deliver the underlying stocks or cash to the broker through whom the transaction is effected. In the case of an exchange-traded option, the Fund establishes an escrow account. The Fund's custodian (or a securities depository acting for the custodian) acts as the Fund's escrow agent. The escrow agent enters into documents known as escrow receipts with respect to the stocks included in the Fund (or escrow receipts with respect to other acceptable securities). The escrow agent releases the stocks from the escrow account when the call option expires or the Fund enters into a closing purchase transaction. Until such release, the underlying stocks cannot be sold by the Fund. The Funds may enter into similar collateral arrangements with the counterparty when it sells OTC index call options.

The purchaser of an index call option sold by a Fund may exercise the option at a price fixed as of the closing level of the index on exercise date. Unless a Fund has liquid assets sufficient to satisfy the exercise of the index call option, the Fund would be required to liquidate portfolio securities to satisfy the exercise. The market value of such securities may decline between the time the option is exercised and the time the Fund is able to sell the securities. For example, even if an index call which the Fund has written is "covered" by an index call held by the Fund with the same strike price, it will bear the risk that the level of the index may decline between the close of trading on the date the exercise notice is filed with the Options Clearing Corporation and the close of trading on the date the Fund exercises the call it holds or the time it sells the call, which in either case would occur no earlier than the day following the day the exercise notice was filed. If the Fund fails to anticipate an exercise, it may have to borrow from a bank (in amounts not exceeding 5% of the Fund's total assets) pending settlement of the sale of the portfolio securities and thereby incur interest charges. If trading is interrupted on the index, the Fund would not be able to close out its option positions.

**Risks of Transactions in Options.** There are several risks associated with transactions in options on securities and indices. Options may be more volatile than the underlying securities and, therefore, on a percentage basis, an investment in options may be subject to greater fluctuation in value than an investment in the underlying securities themselves. There are also significant differences between the securities and options markets that could result in an imperfect correlation between these markets, causing a given transaction not to achieve its objective. In addition, a liquid secondary market for particular options may be absent for reasons which include the following: there may be insufficient trading interest in certain options; restrictions may be imposed by an exchange on opening transactions or closing transactions or both; trading halts, suspensions or other restrictions may be imposed with respect to particular classes or series of options of underlying securities; unusual or unforeseen circumstances may interrupt normal operations on an exchange; the facilities of an exchange or clearing corporation may not be adequate to handle current trading volume at all times; or one or more exchanges could, for economic or other reasons, decide or be compelled at some future date to discontinue the trading of options (or a particular class or series of options), in which event the secondary market on that exchange (or in that class or series of options) would cease to exist, although outstanding options that had been issued by a clearing corporation as a result of trades on that exchange would continue to be exercisable in accordance with their terms.

A decision as to whether, when and how to use options involves the exercise of skill and judgment, and even a well-conceived transaction may be unsuccessful to some degree because of market behavior or unexpected events. The extent to which a Fund may enter into options transactions may be limited by the requirements of the Code, for qualification of a Fund as a regulated investment company.

**OTC Options.** A Fund may engage in transactions involving OTC as well as exchange-traded options. Certain additional risks are specific to OTC options. A Fund may engage a clearing corporation to exercise exchange-traded options, but if the Fund purchased an OTC option, it must then rely on the dealer from which it purchased the option if the option is exercised. Failure by the dealer to do so would result in the loss of the premium paid by a Fund as well as loss of the expected benefit of the transaction.

Exchange-traded options generally have a continuous liquid market while OTC options may not. Consequently, a Fund may generally be able to realize the value of an OTC option it has purchased only by exercising or reselling the option to the dealer who issued it. Similarly, when a Fund writes an OTC option, the Fund may generally be able to close out the option prior to its expiration only by entering into a closing purchase transaction with the dealer to whom the Fund originally wrote the option. While a Fund will seek to enter into OTC options only with dealers who will agree to and are expected to be capable of entering into closing transactions with the Fund, there can be no assurance that the Fund will at any time be able to liquidate an OTC option at a favorable price at any time prior to expiration. Unless the Fund, as a covered OTC call option writer, is able to effect a closing purchase transaction, it will not be able to liquidate securities (or other assets) used as cover until the option expires or is exercised. In the event of insolvency of the other party, the Fund may be unable to liquidate an OTC option. With respect to options written by the Fund, the inability to enter into a closing transaction may result in material losses to a Fund.

The SEC has taken the position that purchased OTC options are illiquid securities. The Funds may treat the cover used for written OTC options as liquid if the dealer agrees that the Funds may repurchase the OTC option it has written for a maximum price to be calculated by a predetermined formula. In such cases, the OTC option would be considered illiquid only to the extent the maximum purchase price under the formula exceeds the intrinsic value of the option. Accordingly, the Funds will treat OTC options as subject to the Funds' limitation on illiquid securities. If the SEC changes its position on the liquidity of OTC options, the Funds will change the treatment of such instruments accordingly.

**Stock Index Options.** The Funds may invest in options on indices, including broad-based security indices. Puts and calls on indices are similar to puts and calls on other investments except that all settlements are in cash and gain or loss depends on changes in the index in question rather than on price movements in individual securities. When a Fund writes a call on an index, it receives a premium and agrees that, prior to the expiration date, the purchaser of the call, upon exercise of the call, will receive from the Fund an amount of cash if the closing level of the index upon which the call is based is greater than the exercise price of the call. The amount of cash is equal to the difference between the closing price of the index and the exercise price of the call times a specified multiple ("multiplier"), which determines the total dollar value for each point of such difference. When the Fund buys a call on an index, it pays a premium and has the same rights as to such call as are indicated above. When the Fund buys a put on an index, it pays a premium and has the right, prior to the expiration date, to require the seller of the put, upon the Fund's exercise of the put, to deliver to the Fund an amount of cash if the closing level of the index upon which the put is based is less than the exercise price of the put, which amount of cash is determined by the multiplier, as described above for calls. When the Fund writes a put on an index, it receives a premium and the purchaser of the put has the right, prior to the expiration date, to require the Fund to deliver to it an amount of cash equal to the difference between the closing level of the index and exercise price times the multiplier if the closing level is less than the exercise price.

The risks of investment in options on indices may be greater than options on securities. Because index options are settled in cash, if the Fund writes a call on an index it cannot provide in advance for its potential settlement obligations by acquiring and holding the underlying index. The Fund can offset some of the risk of writing a call index option by holding a diversified portfolio of securities or instruments similar to those on which the underlying index is based. However, the Fund cannot, as a practical matter, acquire and hold a portfolio containing exactly the same securities or instruments as underlie the index and, as a result, bears a risk that the value of the securities or instruments held will vary from the value of the index.

Even if the Fund could assemble a portfolio that exactly reproduced the composition of the underlying index, it still would not be fully covered from a risk standpoint because of the "timing risk" inherent in writing index options. When an index option is exercised, the amount of cash that the holder is entitled to receive is determined by the difference between the exercise price and the closing index level on the date when the option is exercised. As with other kinds of options, the Fund as the call writer will not learn of the assignment until the next business day at the earliest. The time lag between exercise and notice of assignment poses no risk for the writer of a covered call on a specific underlying security or instrument, such as common stock, because there the writer's obligation is to deliver the underlying security or instrument, not to pay its value as of a fixed time in the past. So long as the writer already owns the underlying security or instrument, it can satisfy its settlement obligations by simply delivering it, and the risk that its value may have declined since the exercise date is borne by the exercising holder. In contrast, even if the writer of an index call holds investments that exactly match the composition of the underlying index, it will not be able to satisfy its assignment obligations by

delivering those investments against payment of the exercise price. Instead, it will be required to pay cash in an amount based on the closing index value on the exercise date. By the time it learns that it has been assigned, the index may have declined, with a corresponding decline in the value of its portfolio. This “timing risk” is an inherent limitation on the ability of index call writers to cover their risk exposure by holding security or instrument positions.

If the Fund has purchased an index option and exercises it before the closing index value for that day is available, it runs the risk that the level of the underlying index may subsequently change. If such a change causes the exercised option to fall out-of-the-money, the Fund will be required to pay the difference between the closing index value and the exercise price of the option (times the applicable multiplier) to the assigned writer.

**Dealer Options.** The Fund may engage in transactions involving dealer options as well as exchange-traded options. Certain additional risks are specific to dealer options. While the Fund might look to a clearing corporation to exercise exchange-traded options, if the Fund were to purchase a dealer option it would need to rely on the dealer from which it purchased the option to perform if the option were exercised. Failure by the dealer to do so would result in the loss of the premium paid by the Fund as well as loss of the expected benefit of the transaction. Exchange-traded options generally have a continuous liquid market while dealer options may not. Consequently, the Fund may generally be able to realize the value of a dealer option it has purchased only by exercising or reselling the option to the dealer who issued it. Similarly, when the Fund writes a dealer option, the Fund may generally be able to close out the option prior to its expiration only by entering into a closing purchase transaction with the dealer to whom the Fund originally wrote the option. While the Fund will seek to enter into dealer options only with dealers who will agree to and which are expected to be capable of entering into closing transactions with the Fund, there can be no assurance that the Fund will at any time be able to liquidate a dealer option at a favorable price at any time prior to expiration. Unless the Fund, as a covered dealer call option writer, is able to effect a closing purchase transaction, it will not be able to liquidate securities (or other assets) used as cover until the option expires or is exercised. In the event of insolvency of the other party, the Fund may be unable to liquidate a dealer option. With respect to options written by the Fund, the inability to enter into a closing transaction may result in material losses to the Fund. For example, because the Fund must maintain a secured position with respect to any call option on a security it writes, the Fund may not sell the assets, which it has segregated to secure the position while it is obligated under the option. This requirement may impair the Fund’s ability to sell portfolio securities at a time when such sale might be advantageous. The Staff of the SEC has taken the position that purchased dealer options are illiquid securities. The Fund may treat the cover used for written dealer options as liquid if the dealer agrees that the Fund may repurchase the dealer option it has written for a maximum price to be calculated by a predetermined formula. In such cases, the dealer option would be considered illiquid only to the extent the maximum purchase price under the formula exceeds the intrinsic value of the option. Accordingly, the Fund will treat dealer options as subject to the Fund’s limitation on illiquid securities. If the SEC changes its position on the liquidity of dealer options, the Fund will change its treatment of such instruments accordingly.

**Spread Transactions.** The Fund may purchase covered spread options from securities dealers. These covered spread options are not presently exchange-listed or exchange-traded. The purchase of a spread option gives the Fund the right to put securities that it owns at a fixed dollar spread or fixed yield spread in relationship to another security that it does not own, but which is used as a benchmark. The risk to the Fund, in addition to the risks of dealer options described above, is the cost of the premium paid as well as any transaction costs. The purchase of spread options will be used to protect the Fund against adverse changes in prevailing credit quality spreads, i.e., the yield spread between high quality and lower quality securities. This protection is provided only during the life of the spread options.

### **Futures and Options on Futures**

The Funds may use interest rate, foreign currency, index and other futures contracts. The Funds may use options on futures contracts. A futures contract provides for the future sale by one party and purchase by another party of a specified quantity of the security or other financial instrument at a specified price and time. The AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund may invest in futures contracts and options on futures contracts through the Subsidiary. A futures contract on an index is an agreement pursuant to which two parties agree to take or make delivery of an amount of cash equal to the difference between the value of the index at the close of the last trading day of the contract and the price at which the index contract originally was written. Although the value of an index might be a function of the value of certain specified securities, physical delivery of these securities is not always made. A public market exists in futures contracts covering a number

of indexes, as well as financial instruments, including, without limitation: U.S. Treasury bonds; U.S. Treasury notes; GNMA Certificates; three-month U.S. Treasury bills; 90-day commercial paper; bank certificates of deposit; Eurodollar certificates of deposit; the Australian dollar; the Canadian dollar; the British Pound; the Japanese Yen; the Swiss Franc; the Mexican Peso; and certain multinational currencies, such as the Euro. It is expected that other futures contracts will be developed and traded in the future.

The Funds may purchase and write (sell) call and put futures options. Futures options possess many of the same characteristics as options on securities and indexes (discussed above). A futures option gives the holder the right, in return for the premium paid, to assume a long position (call) or short position (put) in a futures contract at a specified exercise price upon expiration of, or at any time during the period of, the option. Upon exercise of a call option, the holder acquires a long position in the futures contract and the writer is assigned the opposite short position. In the case of a put option, the opposite is true. When a purchase or sale of a futures contract is made by the Funds, the Funds are required to deposit with its futures commission merchant a specified amount of liquid assets (“initial margin”). The margin required for a futures contract is set by the exchange on which the contract is traded and may be modified during the term of the contract. The initial margin is in the nature of a performance bond or good faith deposit on the futures contract that is returned to the Funds upon termination of the contract, assuming all contractual obligations have been satisfied. The Funds expect to earn taxable interest income on its initial margin deposits. The Funds, as a writer of an option, may have no control over whether the underlying futures contracts may be sold (call) or purchased (put) and as a result, bears the market risk of an unfavorable change in the valuation of the futures contracts underlying the written option. The Funds, as a purchaser of an option, bears the risk that the counterparties to the option may not have the ability to meet the terms of the option contract.

The Fund invests in futures, options on futures and other instruments subject to regulation by the CFTC in reliance upon and in accordance with CFTC Regulation 4.5. Under Regulation 4.5, if the Fund uses futures, options on futures, or swaps other than for bona fide hedging purposes (as defined by the CFTC), the aggregate initial margin and premiums on these positions (after taking into account unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such positions and excluding the amount by which options are “in-the-money” at the time of purchase of a new position) may not exceed 5% of the Fund’s liquidation value, or alternatively, the aggregate net notional value of those positions at the time may not exceed 100% of the Fund’s liquidation value (after taking into account unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such positions). As detailed in the table below, the following Sub-Advisors are registered as a commodity pool operator and/or commodity trading advisors. Therefore, the Advisor and these Sub-Advisors are subject to CFTC requirements in such capacity, including recordkeeping, reporting, and disclosure requirements. In addition, the Advisor and these Sub-Advisors may be subject to substantially the same requirements with regard to the Subsidiaries.

<b>Fund</b>	<b>Sub-Advisor</b>	<b>Registered With CFTC as CPO/CTA</b>
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	Chesapeake	CPO/CTA
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	None	CPO

The Advisor, on behalf of each of the AXS Adaptive Plus Fund, AXS Merger Fund, AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund and AXS Sustainable Income Fund, has filed a notice of eligibility for exclusion from the definition of the term “commodity pool operator” in accordance with CFTC Regulation 4.5. As of the date of this SAI, the Funds is not deemed to be a “commodity pool” or “commodity pool operator” under the Commodity Exchange Act (“CEA”), and it is not subject to registration or regulation as such under the CEA.

The futures contracts held by the Funds are valued daily at the official settlement price of the exchange on which it is traded. Each day the Funds pay or receives cash, called “variation margin”, equal to the daily change in value of the futures contract. This process is known as “marking to market”. Variation margin does not represent a borrowing or loan by the Funds but is instead a settlement between the Funds and the broker of the amount one would owe the other if the futures contract expired. In computing daily net asset value, the Funds will mark to market its open futures positions. The Funds also are required to deposit and to maintain margin with respect to put and call options on futures contracts written by it. Such margin deposits will vary depending on the nature of the underlying futures contract (and the related initial margin requirements), the current market value of the option and other futures positions held by the

Funds. Although some futures contracts call for making or taking delivery of the underlying securities, generally these obligations are closed out prior to delivery by offsetting purchases or sales of matching futures contracts (involving the same exchange, underlying security or index and delivery month). If an offsetting purchase price is less than the original sale price, the Funds realizes a capital gain, or if it is more, the Funds realize a capital loss. Conversely, if an offsetting sale price is more than the original purchase price, the Funds realize a capital gain, or if it is less, the Funds realize a capital loss. The transaction costs also must be included in these calculations.

The Funds may write covered straddles consisting of a call and a put written on the same underlying futures contract. A straddle will be covered when sufficient assets are deposited to meet the Funds' immediate obligations. The Funds may use the same liquid assets to cover both the call and put options if the exercise price of the call and put are the same, or if the exercise price of the call is higher than that of the put.

### **Stock Index Futures**

The Funds may invest in stock index futures only as a substitute for a comparable market position in the underlying securities. A stock index future obligates the seller to deliver (and the purchaser to accept), effectively, an amount of cash equal to a specific dollar amount times the difference between the value of a specific stock index at the close of the last trading day of the contract and the price at which the agreement is made. No physical delivery of the underlying stocks in the index is made. With respect to stock indices that are permitted investments, the Funds intend to purchase and sell futures contracts on the stock index for which it can obtain the best price with consideration also given to liquidity.

### **Regulation as a Commodity Pool Operator**

Each of the AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund and AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund is a "commodity pool" under the CEA, and the Advisor is registered as a "commodity pool operator" with the CFTC and is a member of the National Futures Association ("NFA") with respect to the Funds. As a registered commodity pool operator with respect to the Fund, the Advisor must comply with various regulatory requirements under the CEA, and the rules and regulations of the CFTC and the NFA, including investor protection requirements, antifraud prohibitions, disclosure requirements, and reporting and recordkeeping requirements. The Advisor is also subject to periodic inspections and audits by the CFTC and NFA.

### **Swap Transactions**

A Fund may enter into interest rate, currency and index swaps and the purchase or sale of related caps, floors and collars. A Fund may enter into these transactions to preserve a return or spread on a particular investment or portion of its portfolio, to protect against currency fluctuations or to protect against any increase in the price of securities it anticipates purchasing at a later date. Swaps may be used in conjunction with other instruments to offset interest rate, currency or other underlying risks. For example, interest rate swaps may be offset with "caps," "floors" or "collars". A "cap" is essentially a call option which places a limit on the amount of floating rate interest that must be paid on a certain principal amount. A "floor" is essentially a put option which places a limit on the minimum amount that would be paid on a certain principal amount. A "collar" is essentially a combination of a long cap and a short floor where the limits are set at different levels.

A Fund will usually enter into swaps on a net basis; that is, the two payment streams will be netted out in a cash settlement on the payment date or dates specified in the instrument, with a Fund receiving or paying, as the case may be, only the net amount of the two payments.

**Total Return Swaps.** A Fund may enter into total return swap contracts for investment purposes. Total return swaps are contracts in which one party agrees to make periodic payments based on the change in market value of the underlying assets, which may include a specified security, basket of securities or security indexes during the specified period, in return for periodic payments based on a fixed or variable interest rate of the total return from other underlying assets. Total return swaps may be used to obtain exposure to a security or market without owning or taking physical custody of such security or market, including in cases in which there may be disadvantages associated with direct ownership of a particular security. In a typical total return equity swap, payments made by a Fund or the counterparty are based on the total return of a particular reference asset or assets (such as an equity security, a combination of such securities, or

an index). That is, one party agrees to pay another party the return on a stock, basket of stocks, or stock index in return for a specified interest rate. By entering into an equity index swap, for example, the index receiver can gain exposure to stocks making up the index of securities without actually purchasing those stocks. Total return swaps involve not only the risk associated with the investment in the underlying securities, but also the risk of the counterparty not fulfilling its obligations under the agreement.

**Credit Default Swaps.** A Fund may enter into credit default swap transactions for investment purposes. A credit default swap may have as reference obligations one or more securities that are not currently held by a Fund. A Fund may be either the buyer or seller in the transaction. Credit default swaps may also be structured based on the debt of a basket of issuers, rather than a single issuer, and may be customized with respect to the default event that triggers purchase or other factors. As a seller, a Fund would generally receive an upfront payment or a fixed rate of income throughout the term of the swap, which typically is between six months and three years, provided that there is no credit event. If a credit event occurs, generally the seller must pay the buyer the full face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference obligations that may have little or no value. If a Fund were a buyer and no credit event occurs, a Fund would recover nothing if the swap is held through its termination date. However, if a credit event occurs, the buyer may elect to receive the full notional value of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference obligation that may have little or no value. The use of swap transactions by a Fund entails certain risks, which may be different from, or possibly greater than, the risks associated with investing directly in the securities and other investments that are the referenced asset for the swap transaction. Swaps are highly specialized instruments that require investment techniques, risk analyses, and tax planning different from those associated with stocks, bonds, and other traditional investments. The use of a swap requires an understanding not only of the referenced asset, reference rate, or index, but also of the swap itself, without the benefit of observing the performance of the swap under all the possible market conditions. Because some swap transactions have a leverage component, adverse changes in the value or level of the underlying asset, reference rate, or index can result in a loss substantially greater than the amount invested in the swap itself. Certain swaps have the potential for unlimited loss, regardless of the size of the initial investment.

A Fund may also purchase credit default swap contracts in order to hedge against the risk of default of the debt of a particular issuer or basket of issuers, in which case a Fund would function as the counterparty referenced in the preceding paragraph. This would involve the risk that the investment may expire worthless and would only generate income in the event of an actual default by the issuer(s) of the underlying obligation(s) (or, as applicable, a credit downgrade or other indication of financial instability). It would also involve the risk that the seller may fail to satisfy its payment obligations to a Fund in the event of a default. The purchase of credit default swaps involves costs, which will reduce a Fund's return.

**Currency Swaps.** The Fund may enter into currency swap transactions for investment purposes. Currency swaps are similar to interest rate swaps, except that they involve multiple currencies. The Fund may enter into a currency swap when it has exposure to one currency and desires exposure to a different currency. Typically the interest rates that determine the currency swap payments are fixed, although occasionally one or both parties may pay a floating rate of interest. Unlike an interest rate swap, however, the principal amounts are exchanged at the beginning of the contract and returned at the end of the contract. In addition to paying and receiving amounts at the beginning and termination of the agreements, both sides will also have to pay in full periodically based upon the currency they have borrowed. Change in foreign exchange rates and changes in interest rates, as described above, may negatively affect currency swaps.

**Interest Rate Swaps.** A Fund may enter into an interest rate swap in an effort to protect against declines in the value of fixed income securities held by a Fund. In such an instance, a Fund may agree to pay a fixed rate (multiplied by a notional amount) while a counterparty agrees to pay a floating rate (multiplied by the same notional amount). If interest rates rise, resulting in a diminution in the value of a Fund's portfolio, a Fund would receive payments under the swap that would offset, in whole or in part, such diminution in value.

**Options on Swaps.** A Fund may enter into options on swaps. An option on swaps, or a "swaption," is a contract that gives a counterparty the right (but not the obligation) to enter into new swaps or to shorten, extend, cancel or otherwise modify existing swaps, at some designated future time on specified terms. In return, the purchaser pays a "premium" to the seller of the contract. The seller of the contract receives the premium and bears the risk of unfavorable changes on the underlying swap. A Fund may write (sell) and purchase put and call swaptions. A Fund may also enter into swaptions on either an asset-based or liability-based basis, depending on whether a Fund is hedging its assets or its liabilities. A Fund



may write (sell) and purchase put and call swaptions to the same extent it may make use of standard options on securities or other instruments. A Fund may enter into these transactions primarily to preserve a return or spread on a particular investment or portion of its holdings, as a duration management technique, to protect against an increase in the price of securities a Fund anticipates purchasing at a later date, or for any other purposes, such as for speculation to increase returns. Swaptions are generally subject to the same risks involved in a Fund's use of options.

Depending on the terms of the particular option agreement, a Fund will generally incur a greater degree of risk when it writes a swaption than it will incur when it purchases a swaption. When a Fund purchases a swaption, it risks losing only the amount of the premium it has paid should it decide to let the option expire unexercised. However, when a Fund writes a swaption, upon exercise of the option a Fund will become obligated according to the terms of the underlying agreement.

### **OTC Derivatives Transactions**

A Fund may enter into OTC derivatives transactions. The Dodd-Frank Act established a new statutory framework that comprehensively regulated the OTC derivatives markets for the first time. Key Dodd-Frank Act provisions relating to OTC derivatives require rulemaking by the SEC and the CFTC, not all of which has been proposed or finalized as at the date of this SAI. Prior to the Dodd-Frank Act, the OTC derivatives markets were traditionally traded on a bilateral basis (so-called "bilateral OTC transactions"). Now certain OTC derivatives contracts are required to be centrally cleared and traded on exchanges or electronic trading platforms called swap execution facilities ("SEFs").

Bilateral OTC transactions differ from exchange-traded or cleared derivatives transactions in several respects. Bilateral OTC transactions are transacted directly with dealers and not with a clearing corporation. Without the availability of a clearing corporation, bilateral OTC transaction pricing is normally done by reference to information from market makers, which information is carefully monitored by the Advisor and verified in appropriate cases. As bilateral OTC transactions are entered into directly with a dealer, there is a risk of nonperformance by the dealer as a result of its insolvency or otherwise. Under recently adopted CFTC regulations, counterparties of registered swap dealers and major swap participants have the right to elect segregation of initial margin in respect of uncleared swaps. If a counterparty makes such an election, any initial margin that is posted to the swap dealer or major swap participant must be segregated in individual customer accounts held at an independent third-party custodian. In addition, the collateral may only be invested in certain categories of instruments identified in the CFTC's regulations. Agreements covering these segregation arrangements must generally provide for consent by both the counterparty and the swap dealer or major swap participant to withdraw margin from the segregated account. Given these limitations on the use of uncleared swaps collateral, there is some likelihood that the electing counterparty will experience an increase in the costs associated with trading swaps with the relevant swap dealer or major swap participant. Certain other protections apply to a counterparty to uncleared swaps under the CFTC's regulations even if the counterparty does not elect segregation of its initial margin. These regulations are newly adopted, and it remains unclear whether they will be effective in protecting initial margin in the manner intended in the event of significant market stress or the insolvency of a swap dealer or major swap participant.

Furthermore, a bilateral OTC transaction may only be terminated voluntarily by entering into a closing transaction with the dealer with which a Fund originally dealt. Any such cancellation may require a Fund to pay a premium to that dealer. In those cases in which a Fund has entered into a covered transaction and cannot voluntarily terminate the transaction, a Fund will not be able to sell the underlying security until the transaction expires or is exercised or different cover is substituted. A Fund will seek to enter into OTC transactions only with dealers which agree to, and which are expected to be capable of, entering into closing transactions with a Fund. There is also no assurance that a Fund will be able to liquidate an OTC transaction at any time prior to expiration.

The requirement to execute certain OTC derivatives contracts on SEFs may offer certain advantages over traditional bilateral OTC trading, such as ease of execution, price transparency, increased liquidity and/or favorable pricing. However, SEF trading may make it more difficult and costly for a Fund to enter into highly tailored or customized transactions and may result in additional costs and risks. Market participants such as a Fund that execute derivatives contracts through a SEF, whether directly or through a broker intermediary, are required to submit to the jurisdiction of the SEF and comply with SEF and CFTC rules and regulations which impose, among other things disclosure and recordkeeping obligations. In addition, a Fund will generally incur SEF or broker intermediary fees when it trades on a SEF. A Fund may also be required to indemnify the SEF or broker intermediary for any losses or costs that may result from a Fund's transactions on the SEF.

### **Commodity Contracts**

A Fund may purchase and sell commodity futures contracts and options; may enter into foreign exchange contracts; may enter into swaps and other financial transactions not requiring the delivery of physical commodities; and may purchase or sell physical commodity contracts or options on such contracts in compliance with applicable commodities laws. Investing in commodities in this manner carries risks. A Fund may also invest in instruments related to commodities, including structured notes, securities of commodities finance and operating companies. A Fund's exposure to the commodities markets may subject a Fund to greater volatility than investments in traditional securities. The value of commodity-linked instruments may be affected by changes in overall market movements, commodity index volatility, changes in interest rates, and other risks affecting a particular industry or commodity. A Fund will only invest in commodities transactions that the Advisor or Sub-Advisor believes can be readily liquidated.

There are additional factors associated with commodity futures contracts which may subject a Fund's investments in them to greater volatility than investments in traditional securities. In the commodity futures markets there are often costs of physical storage associated with purchasing the underlying commodity. The price of the commodity futures contract will reflect the storage costs of purchasing the physical commodity, including the time value of money invested in the physical commodity. To the extent that the storage costs for an underlying commodity change while a Fund is invested in futures contracts on that commodity, the value of the futures contract may change proportionately. In the commodity futures markets, producers of the underlying commodity may decide to hedge the price risk of selling the commodity by selling futures contracts today to lock in the price of the commodity at delivery tomorrow. In order to induce speculators to purchase the other side of the same futures contract, the commodity producer generally must sell the futures contract at a lower price than the expected future spot price of the commodity. Conversely, if most hedgers in the futures market are purchasing futures contracts to hedge against a rise in prices, then speculators will only sell the other side of the futures contract at a higher futures price than the expected future spot price of the commodity. The changing nature of the hedgers and speculators in the commodities markets will influence whether futures prices are above or below the expected future spot price, which can have significant implications for a Fund. If the nature of hedgers and speculators in futures markets has shifted when it is time for a Fund to reinvest the proceeds of a maturing futures contract in a new futures contract, a Fund might reinvest at higher or lower futures prices, or choose to pursue other investments. The commodities which underlie commodity futures contracts may be subject to additional economic and non-economic variables, such as drought, floods, weather, livestock disease, embargoes, tariffs, and international economic, political and regulatory developments. These factors may have a larger impact on commodity prices and commodity-linked instruments, including futures contracts, than on traditional securities. Certain commodities are also subject to limited pricing flexibility because of supply and demand factors. Others are subject to broad price fluctuations as a result of the volatility of the prices for certain raw materials and the instability of the supplies of other materials.

Changes in the regulation of derivatives, including commodity-based derivatives, arising from the Dodd-Frank Act may make it more expensive for a Fund and otherwise limit a Fund's ability to engage in such trading, which could adversely affect a Fund.

### **BORROWING**

The Funds may engage in limited borrowing activities. Borrowing creates an opportunity for increased return, but, at the same time, creates special risks. Furthermore, if the Funds were to engage in borrowing, an increase in interest rates could reduce the value of the Funds' shares by increasing the Funds' interest expense. Subject to the limitations described under "Investment Limitations" below, the Funds may be permitted to borrow for temporary purposes and/or for investment purposes. Such a practice will result in leveraging of the Funds' assets and may cause the Funds to liquidate portfolio positions when it would not be advantageous to do so. This borrowing may be secured or unsecured. Provisions of the 1940 Act require the Funds to maintain continuous asset coverage (that is, total assets including borrowings, less liabilities exclusive of borrowings) of 300% of the amount borrowed, with an exception for borrowings not in excess of 5% of the Funds' total assets made for temporary administrative purposes. Any borrowings for temporary administrative purposes in excess of 5% of the Funds' total assets will count against this asset coverage requirement. If the 300% asset coverage should decline as a result of market fluctuations or other reasons, the Funds may be required to sell some of its portfolio holdings within three days to reduce the debt and restore the 300% asset coverage, even though it may be disadvantageous from an investment standpoint if the Funds sell securities at that time. Borrowing will tend to exaggerate the effect on net asset value of any increase or decrease in the market value of the Funds' portfolios. Money borrowed

will be subject to interest charges which may or may not be recovered by appreciation of the securities purchased, if any. The Funds also may be required to maintain minimum average balances in connection with such borrowings or to pay a commitment or other fee to maintain a line of credit; either of these requirements would increase the cost of borrowing over the stated interest rate.

### **SHORT-TERM INVESTMENTS**

The Funds may invest in any of the following securities and instruments:

**Certificates of Deposit, Bankers' Acceptances and Time Deposits.** The Fund may acquire certificates of deposit, bankers' acceptances and time deposits in U.S. dollar or foreign currencies. Certificates of deposit are negotiable certificates issued against monies deposited in a commercial bank, or savings and loan association for a definite period of time that earn a specified return. Bankers' acceptances are negotiable drafts or bills of exchange, normally drawn by an importer or exporter to pay for specific merchandise, which are "accepted" by a bank, meaning in effect that the bank unconditionally agrees to pay the face value of the instrument on maturity. Time deposits are non-negotiable deposits maintained at a banking institution for a specified period of time at a specified interest rate. The Fund may only acquire certificates of deposit, bankers' acceptances, and time deposits issued by commercial banks or savings and loan associations that, at the time of the Fund's investment, have capital, surplus and undivided profits in excess of \$100 million (including assets of both domestic and foreign branches), based on latest published reports, or less than \$100 million if the principal amount of such obligations are fully insured by the U.S. government. If the Fund holds instruments of foreign banks or financial institutions, it may be subject to additional investment risks that are different in some respects from those incurred if the Fund invests only in debt obligations of U.S. domestic issuers. See "Foreign Investments" above. Such risks include future political and economic developments, the possible imposition of withholding taxes by the particular country in which the issuer is located, the possible confiscation or nationalization of foreign deposits, the possible establishment of exchange controls, or the adoption of other foreign governmental restrictions which may adversely affect the payment of principal and interest on these securities.

Domestic banks and foreign banks are subject to different governmental regulations with respect to the amount and types of loans that may be made and interest rates that may be charged. In addition, the profitability of the banking industry depends largely upon the availability and cost of funds and the interest income generated from lending operations. General economic conditions and the quality of loan portfolios affect the banking industry.

As a result of federal and state laws and regulations, domestic banks are required to maintain specified levels of reserves, are limited in the amount that they can loan to a single borrower, and are subject to regulations designed to promote financial soundness. However, such laws and regulations may not necessarily apply to foreign banks, thereby affecting the risk involved in bank obligations that the Funds may acquire.

**Commercial Paper, Short-Term Notes and Other Corporate Obligations.** Each Fund may invest a portion of its assets in commercial paper and short-term notes. Commercial paper consists of unsecured promissory notes issued by corporations. Issues of commercial paper and short-term notes will normally have maturities of less than nine months and fixed rates of return, although such instruments may have maturities of up to one year.

The Funds' investment in commercial paper and short-term notes will consist of issues rated at the time of purchase "A-2" or higher by S&P, "Prime-1" or "Prime-2" by Moody's, or similarly rated by another nationally recognized statistical rating organization or, if unrated, will be determined by the Sub-Advisor to be of comparable quality. These rating symbols are described in Appendix A.

Corporate debt obligations are subject to the risk of an issuer's inability to meet principal and interest payments on the obligations, i.e., credit risk. The Sub-Advisor may actively expose a Fund to credit risk. However, there can be no guarantee that the Sub-Advisor will be successful in making the right selections and thus fully mitigate the impact of credit risk changes on a Fund.

**Savings Association Obligations.** The Funds may invest in certificates of deposit (interest-bearing time deposits) issued by savings banks or savings and loan associations that have capital, surplus and undivided profits in excess of \$100 million, based on latest published reports, or less than \$100 million if the principal amount of such obligations is fully insured by the U.S. government.

## **MUNICIPAL BONDS**

The Funds may invest in municipal bonds. Municipal bonds are debt obligations issued by the states, possessions, or territories of the United States (including the District of Columbia) or a political subdivision, public instrumentality, agency, public authority or other governmental unit of such states, possessions, or territories (e.g., counties, cities, towns, villages, districts and authorities). For example, states, possessions, territories and municipalities may issue municipal bonds to raise funds for various public purposes such as airports, housing, hospitals, mass transportation, schools, water and sewer works, gas, and electric utilities. They may also issue municipal bonds to refund outstanding obligations and to meet general operating expenses. Municipal bonds may be general obligation bonds or revenue bonds. General obligation bonds are secured by the issuer's pledge of its full faith, credit and taxing power for the payment of principal and interest. Revenue bonds are payable from revenues derived from particular facilities, from the proceeds of a special excise tax or from other specific revenue sources. They are not usually payable from the general taxing power of a municipality. In addition, certain types of "private activity" bonds may be issued by public authorities to obtain funding for privately operated facilities, such as housing and pollution control facilities, for industrial facilities and for water supply, gas, electricity and waste disposal facilities. Other types of private activity bonds are used to finance the construction, repair or improvement of, or to obtain equipment for, privately operated industrial or commercial facilities. Current federal tax laws place substantial limitations on the size of certain of such issues. In certain cases, the interest on a private activity bond may not be exempt from federal income tax or the alternative minimum tax applicable to noncorporate taxpayers.

## **ESG CRITERIA RISK**

The Advisor integrates research on environmental, social and governance ("ESG") factors into the Fund's overall investment process. ESG investments may be viewed as "sustainable," "responsible," or "socially conscious," among other names and there are significant differences in the interpretation of what it means for an issuer to have positive ESG characteristics. ESG factors may include, but are not limited to, matters regarding board diversity, climate change policies, and supply chain and human rights policies. Incorporating ESG criteria and investing in instruments that have certain ESG characteristics, as determined by the Advisor, carries the risk that the Fund may perform differently, including underperforming, funds that do not utilize ESG criteria or an ESG investment strategy. Integration of ESG factors into the Fund's investment process may result in the Advisor making different investments for the Fund than for a fund with a similar investment universe and/or investment style that does not incorporate such considerations in its investment strategy or processes. In addition, because the Advisor's ESG screening process excludes securities of certain issuers, the Fund may forgo some market opportunities available to funds that do not use these criteria. The ESG characteristics utilized in the Fund's investment process may change over time, and different ESG characteristics may be relevant to different investments. Successful integration of ESG factors will depend on the Advisor's skill in researching and identifying these factors as well as the availability of relevant data. The method of evaluating ESG factors and subsequent impact on portfolio composition, performance, proxy voting decisions and other factors, is subject to the interpretation of the Advisor in accordance with the Fund's investment objective and strategies.

## **INVESTMENT COMPANY SECURITIES**

A Fund may invest in shares of other investment companies (each, an "Underlying Fund"), including open-end funds, closed-end funds, unit investment trusts ("UITs") and ETFs, to the extent permitted by applicable law and subject to certain restrictions set forth in this SAI.

Under Section 12(d)(1)(A) of the 1940 Act, the Fund may acquire securities of an Underlying Fund in amounts which, as determined immediately after the acquisition is made, do not exceed (i) 3% of the total outstanding voting stock of such Underlying Fund, (ii) 5% of the value of the Fund's total assets, and (iii) 10% of the value of the Fund's total assets when combined with all other Underlying Fund securities held by the Fund. The Fund may exceed these statutory limits when permitted by SEC order or other applicable law or regulatory guidance, such as is the case with many ETFs. In October 2020, the SEC adopted certain regulatory changes and took other actions related to the ability of an investment company to invest in the securities of another investment company. These changes include, in part, the rescission of certain SEC exemptive orders permitting investments in excess of the statutory limits, the withdrawal of certain related SEC staff no-action letters, and the adoption of Rule 12d1-4 under the 1940 Act, which permits the Fund to invest in other investment companies beyond the statutory limits, subject to certain conditions. Rule 12d1-4, among other things, (1) applies to both "acquired funds" and "acquiring funds," each as defined under the rule; (2) includes limits on control and voting of acquired funds' shares; (3) requires that the investment advisers of acquired funds and acquiring

funds relying on the rule make certain specified findings based on their evaluation of the relevant fund of funds structure; (4) requires acquired funds and acquiring funds that are relying on the rule, and which do not have the same investment adviser, to enter into fund of funds investment agreements, which must include specific terms; and (5) includes certain limits on complex fund of funds structures.

Generally, under Sections 12(d)(1)(F) and 12(d)(1)(G) of the 1940 Act and SEC rules adopted pursuant to the 1940 Act, a Fund may acquire the securities of affiliated and unaffiliated Underlying Funds subject to the following guidelines and restrictions:

- A Fund may own an unlimited amount of the securities of any registered open-end fund or registered unit investment trust that is affiliated with a Fund, so long as any such Underlying Fund has a policy that prohibits it from acquiring any securities of registered open-end funds or registered UITs in reliance on certain sections of the 1940 Act.
- A Fund and its “affiliated persons” may own up to 3% of the outstanding stock of any fund, subject to the following restrictions:
  - i. the Fund and each Underlying Fund, in the aggregate, may not charge a sales load greater than the limits set forth in Rule 2830(d)(3) of the Conduct Rules of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“FINRA”) applicable to funds of funds;
  - ii. each Underlying Fund is not obligated to redeem more than 1% of its total outstanding securities during any period less than 30 days; and
  - iii. the Fund is obligated either to (i) seek instructions from its shareholders with regard to the voting of all proxies with respect to the Underlying Fund and to vote in accordance with such instructions, or (ii) to vote the shares of the Underlying Fund held by the Fund in the same proportion as the vote of all other shareholders of the Underlying Fund.

Underlying Funds typically incur fees that are separate from those fees incurred directly by a Fund. A Fund’s purchase of such investment company securities results in the layering of expenses as Fund shareholders would indirectly bear a proportionate share of the operating expenses of such investment companies, including advisory fees, in addition to paying Fund expenses. In addition, the securities of other investment companies may also be leveraged and will therefore be subject to certain leverage risks. The net asset value and market value of leveraged securities will be more volatile and the yield to shareholders will tend to fluctuate more than the yield generated by unleveraged securities. Investment companies may have investment policies that differ from those of a Fund.

Under certain circumstances an open-end investment company in which a Fund invests may determine to make payment of a redemption by a Fund wholly or in part by a distribution in kind of securities from its portfolio, instead of in cash. As a result, a Fund may hold such securities until the Advisor determines it is appropriate to dispose of them. Such disposition will impose additional costs on a Fund.

Investment decisions by the investment advisors to the registered investment companies in which a Fund invests are made independently of a Fund. At any particular time, one Underlying Fund may be purchasing shares of an issuer whose shares are being sold by another Underlying Fund. As a result, under these circumstances a Fund indirectly would incur certain transactional costs without accomplishing any investment purpose.

### **Exchange-Traded Funds**

A Fund may invest in ETFs. ETFs are pooled investment vehicles that generally seek to track the performance of specific indices. ETFs may be organized as open-end funds or as UITs. Their shares are listed on stock exchanges and can be traded throughout the day at market-determined prices.

An ETF generally issues index-based investments in large aggregations of shares known as “Creation Units” in exchange for a “Portfolio Deposit” consisting of (a) a portfolio of securities designated by the ETF, (b) a cash payment equal to a pro rata portion of the dividends accrued on the ETF’s portfolio securities since the last dividend payment by the ETF, net of expenses and liabilities, and (c) a cash payment or credit (“Balancing Amount”) designed to equalize the net asset value of the shares and the net asset value of a Portfolio Deposit.

Shares of ETFs are not individually redeemable, except upon the reorganization, merger, conversion or liquidation of the ETF. To redeem shares of an ETF, an investor must accumulate enough shares of the ETF to reconstitute a Creation Unit. The liquidity of small holdings of ETF shares, therefore, will depend upon the existence of a secondary market for such shares. Upon redemption of a Creation Unit, the investor will receive securities designated by the ETF (“Redemption Securities”) and a cash payment in an amount equal to the difference between the net asset value of the shares being redeemed and the net asset value of the Redemption Securities.

The price of ETF shares is based upon (but not necessarily identical to) the value of the securities held by the ETF. Accordingly, the level of risk involved in the purchase or sale of ETF shares is similar to the risk involved in the purchase or sale of traditional common stock, with the exception that the pricing mechanism for ETF shares is based on a basket of stocks. Disruptions in the markets for the securities underlying ETF shares purchased or sold by a Fund could result in losses on such shares. There is no assurance that the requirements of the national securities exchanges necessary to maintain the listing of shares of any ETF will continue to be met.

### **Leveraged and Inverse ETFs**

A Fund may invest in leveraged ETFs, inverse ETFs and inverse leveraged ETFs. Leveraged ETFs seek to deliver multiples of the performance of the index or other benchmark they track and use derivatives in an effort to amplify the returns of the underlying index or benchmark. While leveraged ETFs may offer the potential for greater return, the potential for loss and the speed at which losses can be realized also are greater. Inverse ETFs seek to negatively correlate with the performance of a particular index by using various forms of derivative transactions, including by short-selling the underlying index. An investment in an inverse ETF will decrease in value when the value of the underlying index rises. A number of factors may affect an inverse ETF’s ability to achieve a high degree of inverse correlation with the benchmark index, and there can be no guarantee that an inverse ETF will achieve a high degree of inverse correlation. By investing in leveraged ETFs and inverse ETFs, a Fund can commit fewer assets to the investment in the securities represented on the index than would otherwise be required.

Leveraged ETFs and inverse ETFs present all of the risks that regular ETFs present. In addition, such ETFs determine their return over a specific, pre-set time period, typically daily, and, as a result, there is no guarantee that the ETF’s actual long term returns will be equal to the daily return that a Fund seeks to achieve. As a result of compounding, inverse ETFs and leveraged ETFs typically have a single day investment objective. An inverse ETF’s performance for periods greater than a single day is likely to be either better or worse than the inverse of the benchmark index performance, before accounting for fees and fund expenses. Similarly, a leveraged ETF’s performance for periods greater than one day is likely to be either better or worse than the index performance, times the relevant multiple. This effect becomes more pronounced for these types of ETFs as market volatility increases. Even when the value of the underlying benchmark with which an inverse ETF seeks to negatively correlate decreases, the value of the inverse ETF may not necessarily increase.

Furthermore, because leveraged ETFs and inverse ETFs achieve their results by using derivative instruments, they are subject to the risks associated with derivative transactions, including the risk that the value of the derivatives may rise or fall more rapidly than other investments, thereby causing the ETF to lose money and, consequently, the value of a Fund’s investment to decrease. Investing in derivative instruments also involves the risk that other parties to the derivative contract may fail to meet their obligations, which could cause losses to the ETF. Short sales in particular are subject to the risk that, if the price of the security sold short increases, the inverse ETF or inverse leveraged ETF may have to cover its short position at a higher price than the short sale price, resulting in a loss to the ETF and, indirectly, to a Fund. An ETF’s use of these techniques will make a Fund’s investment in the ETF more volatile than if a Fund were to invest directly in the securities underlying the tracked index, or in an ETF that does not use derivative instruments. However, by investing in leveraged ETFs and inverse ETFs rather than directly purchasing and/or selling derivative instruments, a Fund will limit its potential loss solely to the amount actually invested in the ETF (that is, a Fund will not lose more than the principal amount invested in the ETF).

Inverse ETF performance for periods greater than a single day can be estimated given any set of assumptions for the following factors: a) benchmark index volatility; b) benchmark index performance; c) period of time; d) financing rates associated with inverse exposure; e) other fund expenses; and f) dividends or interest paid with respect to securities in the benchmark index. The chart below illustrates the impact of two principal factors — index volatility and index performance — on the performance of an inverse ETF. The chart shows estimated fund returns for a number of combinations of benchmark index volatility and benchmark index performance over a one-year period. Performance

shown in the chart assumes: (a) no dividends paid with respect to securities included in the benchmark index; (b) no fund expenses; and (c) borrowing/lending rates (to obtain inverse exposure) of zero percent. If fund expenses and/or actual borrowing/lending rates were reflected, the inverse ETF's performance would be different than shown.

Areas shaded darker represent those scenarios where an inverse ETF can be expected to return less than the inverse of the performance of its benchmark index.

Index Performance		Estimated Fund Returns				
		One Year Volatility Rate				
One Year Index	Inverse (-1x) of the One Year Index	10%	25%	50%	75%	100%
-60%	60%	147.5%	134.9%	94.7%	42.4%	-8.0%
-50%	50%	98.0%	87.9%	55.8%	14.0%	-26.4%
-40%	40%	65.0%	56.6%	29.8%	-5.0%	-38.7%
-30%	30%	41.4%	34.2%	11.3%	-18.6%	-47.4%
-20%	20%	23.8%	17.4%	-2.6%	-28.8%	-54.0%
-10%	10%	10.0%	4.4%	-13.5%	-36.7%	-59.1%
0%	0%	-1.0%	-6.1%	-22.1%	-43.0%	-63.2%
10%	-10%	-10.0%	-14.6%	-29.2%	-48.2%	-66.6%
20%	-20%	-17.5%	-21.7%	-35.1%	-52.5%	-69.3%
30%	-30%	-23.8%	-27.7%	-40.1%	-56.2%	-71.7%
40%	-40%	-29.3%	-32.9%	-44.4%	-59.3%	-73.7%
50%	-50%	-34.0%	-37.4%	-48.1%	-62.0%	-75.5%
60%	-60%	-38.1%	-41.3%	-51.3%	-64.4%	-77.0%

The foregoing table is intended to isolate the effect of benchmark index volatility and benchmark index performance on the return of an inverse ETF. For example, an inverse ETF may incorrectly be expected to achieve a -20% return on a yearly basis if the benchmark index return were 20%, absent the effects of compounding. However, as the table shows, with benchmark index volatility of 50%, the inverse ETF could be expected to return -35.1% under such a scenario. An inverse ETF's actual returns may be significantly better or worse than the returns shown above as a result of any of the factors discussed above or in the discussion "Inverse ETF Correlation Risk" in the Prospectus.

### **Closed-End Funds**

The Funds may invest in shares of closed-end funds. Investments in closed-end funds are subject to various risks, including reliance on management's ability to meet the closed-end fund's investment objective and to manage the closed-end fund portfolio; fluctuation in the net asset value of closed-end fund shares compared to the changes in the value of the underlying securities that the closed-end fund owns; and bearing a pro rata share of the management fees and expenses of each underlying closed-end fund resulting in a Fund's shareholders being subject to higher expenses than if he or she invested directly in the closed-end fund(s).

### **Exchange Traded Notes ("ETNs")**

The Funds may invest in ETNs. An investment in an ETN involves risks, including possible loss of principal. ETNs are unsecured debt securities issued by a bank that are linked to the total return of a market index. Risks of investing in ETNs also include limited portfolio diversification, uncertain principal payment, and illiquidity. Additionally, the investor fee will reduce the amount of return on maturity or at redemption, and as a result the investor may receive less than the principal amount at maturity or upon redemption, even if the value of the relevant index has increased. An investment in an ETN may not be suitable for all investors.

## **OTHER POOLED INVESTMENT VEHICLES**

The Funds may invest in pooled investment vehicles, including limited partnerships. Examples of such vehicles include private equity funds and private equity funds of funds. A private equity fund generally invests in non-public companies that the fund's manager believes will experience significant growth over a certain time period. A private equity fund of funds invests in other private equity funds of the type described. Investments in private equity funds, once made, typically may not be redeemed for several years, though they may be sold to other investors under certain circumstances.

To the extent that the Funds invest in pooled investment vehicles, such investments may be deemed illiquid. In addition, the Fund will bear its ratable share of such vehicles' expenses, including its management expenses and performance fees. Performance fees are fees paid to the vehicle's manager based on the vehicle's investment performance (or returns) as compared to some benchmark. The fees the Fund pays to invest in a pooled investment vehicle may be higher than the fees it would pay if the manager of the pooled investment vehicle managed the Fund's assets directly. Further, the performance fees payable to the manager of a pooled investment vehicle may create an incentive for the manager to make investments that are riskier or more speculative than those it might make in the absence of an incentive fee.

## **INITIAL PUBLIC OFFERINGS**

The Funds may purchase securities of companies in initial public offerings ("IPOs"). By definition, IPOs have not traded publicly until the time of their offerings. Special risks associated with IPOs may include limited numbers of shares available for trading, unseasoned trading, lack of investor knowledge of the companies, and limited operating history, all of which may contribute to price volatility. Many IPOs are issued by undercapitalized companies of small or micro-cap size. The effect of IPOs on a Fund's performance depends on a variety of factors, including the number of IPOs a Fund invests in relative to the size of a Fund and whether and to what extent a security purchased in an IPO appreciates or depreciates in value.

## **MASTER LIMITED PARTNERSHIPS ("MLPs")**

The Fund may invest in MLPs. An MLP is an entity eligible for partnership taxation treatment under the Code, the interests or "units" of which are traded on securities exchanges like shares of corporate stock. A typical MLP consists of a general partner and limited partners; however, some entities treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes are established as limited liability companies. The general partner manages the partnership; has an ownership stake in the partnership, typically a 2% general partner equity interest and usually additional common units and subordinated units; and is typically eligible to receive an incentive distribution. The limited partners provide capital to the partnership, have a limited (if any) role in the operation and management of the partnership, and receive cash distributions. An MLP typically pays an established minimum quarterly distribution to common unit holders, as provided under the terms of its partnership agreement. Common units have arrearage rights in distributions to the extent that the MLP fails to make minimum quarterly distributions. Once the MLP distributes the minimum quarterly distribution to common units, subordinated units then are entitled to receive distributions of up to the minimum quarterly distribution, but have no arrearage rights. At the discretion of the general partners' board of directors, any distributable cash that exceeds the minimum quarterly distribution that the MLP distributed to the common and subordinated units is then distributed to both common and subordinated units, typically on a pro rata basis. Incentive distributions are often paid to the general partner such that as the distribution to limited partnership interests increases, the general partner may receive a proportionately larger share of the total distribution. Incentive distributions are designed to encourage the general partner, who controls and operates the partnership, to maximize the partnership's cash flow and increase distributions to the limited partners.

Generally speaking, MLP investment returns are enhanced during periods of declining or low interest rates and tend to be negatively influenced when interest rates are rising. As an income vehicle, the unit price can be influenced by general interest rate trends independent of specific underlying fundamentals. In addition, most MLPs are leveraged and typically carry a portion of a "floating" rate debt, and a significant upward swing in interest rates would also drive interest expense higher. Furthermore, most MLPs grow by acquisitions partly financed by debt, and higher interest rates could make it more difficult to make acquisitions.



### **WHEN-ISSUED OR DELAYED-DELIVERY SECURITIES**

The Fund may purchase securities on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis. For example, delivery of and payment for these securities can take place a month or more after the date of the purchase commitment. The purchase price and the interest rate payable, if any, on the securities are fixed on the purchase commitment date or at the time the settlement date is fixed. The value of such securities is subject to market fluctuations and, in the case of fixed income securities, no interest accrues to the Fund until settlement takes place. When purchasing a security on a when-issued or delayed-delivery basis, the Fund assumes the rights and risks of ownership of the security, including the risk of price and yield fluctuations. Accordingly, at the time the Fund makes the commitment to purchase securities on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis, it will record the transaction, reflect the value each day of such securities in determining its net asset value and, if applicable, calculate the maturity for the purposes of average maturity from that date. At the time of its acquisition, a when-issued security may be valued at less than the purchase price. The Fund will make commitments for such when-issued transactions only when it has the intention of actually acquiring the securities. If, however, the Fund chooses to dispose of the right to acquire a when-issued security prior to its acquisition, it could, as with the disposition of any other portfolio obligation, recognize taxable capital gain or loss due to market fluctuation. Also, the Fund may be disadvantaged if the other party to the transaction defaults.

A transaction in when-issued or delayed-delivery securities would be deemed not to involve a senior security (i.e., it will not be considered a derivatives transaction or subject to asset segregation requirements), provided that (i) the Fund intends to physically settle the transaction, and (ii) the transaction will settle within 35 days of its trade date. If such a transaction were considered to be a derivatives transaction, it would be subject to the requirements of the Derivatives Rule described in the “Derivatives” section of this SAI.

### **ILLIQUID AND RESTRICTED SECURITIES**

Each Fund may invest up to 15% of its net assets in illiquid securities. Illiquid securities are securities that a Fund reasonably expects cannot be sold or disposed of in current market conditions in seven calendar days or less without the sale or disposition significantly changing the market value of the securities. Illiquid securities may be difficult to value, and a Fund may have difficulty or be unable to dispose of such securities promptly or at reasonable prices.

The Fund may invest in restricted securities. Restricted securities are securities that may not be sold freely to the public absent registration under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “1933 Act”), or an exemption from registration. While restricted securities are generally presumed to be illiquid, it may be determined that a particular restricted security is liquid. Rule 144A under the 1933 Act establishes a safe harbor from the registration requirements of the 1933 Act for resales of certain securities to qualified institutional buyers. Institutional markets for restricted securities sold pursuant to Rule 144A in many cases provide both readily ascertainable values for restricted securities and the ability to liquidate an investment to satisfy share redemption orders. Such markets might include automated systems for the trading, clearance and settlement of unregistered securities of domestic and foreign issuers, such as the PORTAL System sponsored by NASDAQ. An insufficient number of qualified buyers interested in purchasing Rule 144A eligible restricted securities, however, could adversely affect the marketability of such portfolio securities and result in the Funds’ inability to dispose of such securities promptly or at favorable prices.

The Fund may purchase commercial paper issued pursuant to Section 4(a)(2) of the 1933 Act. 4(a)(2) commercial paper typically has the same price and liquidity characteristics as commercial paper, except that the resale of 4(a)(2) commercial paper is limited to the institutional investor marketplace. Such a restriction on resale makes 4(a)(2) commercial paper technically a restricted security under the 1933 Act. In practice, however, 4(a)(2) commercial paper can be resold as easily as any other unrestricted security held by a Fund.

Rule 22e-4 under the 1940 Act requires, among other things, that the Funds establish a liquidity risk management program (“LRMP”) that is reasonably designed to assess and manage liquidity risk. Rule 22e-4 defines “liquidity risk” as the risk that a fund could not meet requests to redeem shares issued by the fund without significant dilution of the remaining investors’ interests in the fund. The Funds have implemented a LRMP to meet the relevant requirements. Additionally, the Board, including a majority of the Independent Trustees, approved the designation of the Advisor as the Funds’ LRMP administrator to administer such program, and will review no less frequently than annually a written report prepared by the Advisor that addresses the operation of the LRMP and assesses its adequacy and effectiveness of implementation. Among other things, the LRMP provides for the classification of each Fund investment as a “highly liquid investment,” “moderately liquid investment,” “less liquid investment” or “illiquid investment.” The liquidity risk classifications of each Fund’s investments are determined after reasonable inquiry and taking into account relevant

market, trading and investment-specific considerations. To the extent that a Fund investment is deemed to be an “illiquid investment” or a “less liquid investment,” the Fund can expect to be exposed to greater liquidity risk. There is no guarantee the LRMP will be effective in its operations, and complying with Rule 22e-4, including bearing related costs, could impact a Fund’s performance and its ability to seek its investment objective.

The Funds will not purchase illiquid securities if, as a result of the purchase, more than 15% of the Fund’s net assets are invested in such securities. If at any time a portfolio manager and/or the Advisor determines that the value of illiquid securities held by the Fund exceeds 15% of the Fund’s net assets, the Fund’s portfolio managers and the Advisor and Sub-Advisor, as applicable, will take such steps as they consider appropriate to reduce the percentage as soon as reasonably practicable.

### **STRUCTURED INVESTMENTS**

The Funds may invest in structured investments. A structured investment is a security having a return tied to an underlying index or other security or asset class. Structured investments generally are individually negotiated agreements and may be traded OTC. Structured investments are organized and operated to restructure the investment characteristics of the underlying security. This restructuring involves the deposit with or purchase by an entity, such as a corporation or trust, on specified instruments (such as commercial bank loans) and the issuance by that entity or one or more classes of securities (“structured securities”) backed by, or representing interests in, the underlying instruments. The cash flow on the underlying instruments may be apportioned among the newly issued structured securities to create securities with different investment characteristics, such as varying maturities, payment priorities and interest rate provisions, and the extent of such payments made with respect to structured securities is dependent on the extent of the cash flow on the underlying instruments. Because structured securities typically involve no credit enhancement, their credit risk generally will be equivalent to that of the underlying instruments. Investments in structured securities are generally of a class of structured securities that is either subordinated or unsubordinated to the right of payment of another class. Subordinated structured securities typically have higher yields and present greater risks than unsubordinated structured securities. Structured securities are typically sold in private placement transactions, and there currently is no active trading market for structured securities. Investments in government and government-related and restructured debt instruments are subject to special risks, including the inability or unwillingness to repay principal and interest, requests to reschedule or restructure outstanding debt and requests to extend additional loan amounts. Certain issuers of structured investments may be deemed to be “investment companies” as defined in the 1940 Act. As a result, the Fund’s investment in these structured investments may be limited by the restrictions contained in the 1940 Act. Structured investments are typically sold in private placement transactions, and there currently is no active trading market for structured investments.

### **LARGE SHAREHOLDER REDEMPTION RISK**

Certain account holders may from time to time own (beneficially or of record) or control a significant percentage of a Fund’s shares. Redemptions by these account holders of their shares in a Fund may impact a Fund’s liquidity and net asset value. Such redemptions may also force a Fund to sell securities at a time when it would not otherwise do so, which may increase a Fund’s broker costs and impact shareholder taxes.

### **CYBERSECURITY RISK**

Investment companies, such as a Fund, and its service providers may be subject to operational and information security risks resulting from cyber attacks. Cyber attacks include, among other behaviors, stealing or corrupting data maintained online or digitally, denial of service attacks on websites, the unauthorized release of confidential information or various other forms of cyber security breaches. Cyber attacks affecting a Fund or the Advisor, a Fund’s custodian or transfer agent, or intermediaries or other third-party service providers may adversely impact a Fund. For instance, cyber attacks may interfere with the processing of shareholder transactions, impact a Fund’s ability to calculate its net asset value, cause the release of private shareholder information or confidential company information, impede trading, subject a Fund to regulatory fines or financial losses, and cause reputational damage. A Fund may also incur additional costs for cybersecurity risk management purposes. While a Fund and its service providers have established business continuity plans and risk management systems designed to prevent or reduce the impact of cybersecurity attacks, such plans and systems have inherent limitations due in part to the ever-changing nature of technology and cybersecurity attack tactics, and there is a possibility that certain risks have not been adequately identified or prepared for. Furthermore, a Fund cannot control any cybersecurity plans or systems implemented by its service providers.

Similar types of cybersecurity risks are also present for issuers of securities in which a Fund invests, which could result in material adverse consequences for such issuers, and may cause a Fund's investment in such portfolio companies to lose value.

### **LIBOR RISK**

Many financial instruments, financings or other transactions to which the Fund may be a party use or may use a floating rate based on LIBOR. In July 2017, the Financial Conduct Authority, the United Kingdom's financial regulatory body, announced that after 2021 it would cease its active encouragement of banks to provide the quotations needed to sustain LIBOR. The publication of LIBOR on a representative basis ceased for the one-week and two-month U.S. dollar LIBOR settings immediately after December 31, 2021, and it is expected to cease for the remaining U.S. dollar LIBOR settings immediately after June 30, 2023. Actions by regulators have resulted in the establishment of alternative reference rates to LIBOR in most major currencies. The U.S. Federal Reserve, based on the recommendations of the New York Federal Reserve's Alternative Reference Rate Committee, is now publishing SOFR, which is intended to replace U.S. dollar LIBOR. Alternative reference rates for other currencies have also been announced or have begun publication. Markets are slowly developing in response to these new rates. Any potential effects of the transition away from LIBOR on the Fund or on certain instruments in which the Fund invests can be difficult to determine, and they may vary depending on factors that include, but are not limited to, (i) existing fallback or termination provisions in individual contracts and (ii) whether, how, and when industry participants develop and adopt new reference rates and fallbacks for both legacy and new products and instruments. The transition process may involve, among other things, increased volatility or illiquidity in markets for instruments that currently rely on LIBOR, and there may be a reduction in the value of certain instruments held by the Fund.

In March 2022, the Adjustable Interest Rate (LIBOR) Act (the "LIBOR Act") was signed into law. The LIBOR Act provides a statutory fallback mechanism on a nationwide basis to replace LIBOR with a benchmark rate that is selected by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System and based on SOFR for certain contracts that reference LIBOR and contain no, or insufficient, fallback provisions. The LIBOR Act is not self-executing, and thus implementing regulations are expected soon.

### **INDEX INVESTING**

The AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund seeks to provide investment results that, before fees and expenses, correspond generally to the price performance of the FTSE Venture Capital Index (the "Venture Capital Index"). The Venture Capital Index seeks to replicate the aggregate gross performance of U.S. venture capital-backed companies.

Index funds are subject to the same general risks as the securities in the index it tracks. Index investing may also be subject to certain other risks, such as tracking error, licensing and concentration.

### **Tracking Error**

Each Fund's return may not match or achieve a high degree of correlation with the return of the corresponding underlying index. An underlying index's return may not match or achieve a high degree of correlation with the return of U.S. private equity-backed companies or venture capital-funded companies.

### **Licensing**

Each Fund relies on licenses that permit the Fund to use the applicable Index and associated trade names, trademarks, and service marks (the "Intellectual Property") in connection with the name and investment strategies of the Fund. Such licenses may be terminated by the licensor and, as a result, the Fund may lose its ability to use the Intellectual Property. There is also no guarantee that the applicable licensor has all rights to license the Intellectual Property for use by the Fund. Accordingly, in the event a license is terminated or a licensor does not have rights to license the Intellectual Property, it may have a significant effect on the operation of the Fund and may result in a change in the investment policy or closure of the Fund.

### **Concentration**

To the extent that a Fund's investments are concentrated in or significantly exposed to a particular sector, the Fund will be susceptible to loss due to adverse occurrences affecting that sector. Each Fund will be subject to the risk that economic, political or other conditions that have a negative effect on these sectors may adversely affect the Fund to a greater extent than if the Fund's assets were invested in a wider variety of sectors or industries.

## **REPURCHASE AGREEMENTS**

The Funds may enter into repurchase agreements with respect to its portfolio securities. Pursuant to such agreements, the Funds acquire securities from financial institutions such as banks and broker-dealers deemed to be creditworthy by the Advisor or the Sub-Advisors, subject to the seller's agreement to repurchase and the Funds' agreement to resell such securities at a mutually agreed upon date and price. The repurchase price generally equals the price paid by the Funds plus interest negotiated on the basis of current short-term rates (which may be more or less than the rate on the underlying portfolio security). Securities subject to repurchase agreements will be held by the custodian or in the Federal Reserve/Treasury Book-Entry System or an equivalent foreign system. The seller under a repurchase agreement will be required to maintain the value of the underlying securities at not less than 102% of the repurchase price under the agreement. If the seller defaults on its repurchase obligation, the Funds will suffer a loss to the extent that the proceeds from a sale of the underlying securities are less than the repurchase price under the agreement. Bankruptcy or insolvency of such a defaulting seller may cause the Funds' rights with respect to such securities to be delayed or limited. Repurchase agreements are considered to be loans under the 1940 Act.

## **REVERSE REPURCHASE AGREEMENTS**

The Fund may enter into "reverse" repurchase agreements to avoid selling securities during unfavorable market conditions to meet redemptions. A Fund may invest a maximum of 10% of its total assets in reverse repurchase agreements. Pursuant to a reverse repurchase agreement, the Fund will sell portfolio securities and agree to repurchase them from the buyer at a particular date and price. Whenever the Fund enters into a reverse repurchase agreement, it will either (i) consistent with Section 18 of the 1940 Act, maintain asset coverage of at least 300% of the value of the repurchase agreement or (ii) treat the reverse repurchase agreement as a derivatives transaction for purposes of Rule 18f-4, including, as applicable, the VaR based limit on leverage risk. The Fund pays interest on amounts obtained pursuant to reverse repurchase agreements. Reverse repurchase agreements are considered to be borrowings by the Fund.

## **PRIVATE PLACEMENTS AND RESTRICTED SECURITIES**

The Funds may invest in private placement and restricted securities. Private placement securities are securities that have been privately placed and are not registered under the 1933 Act. They are eligible for sale only to certain eligible investors. Private placements often may offer attractive opportunities for investment not otherwise available on the open market. Private placements typically may be sold only to qualified institutional buyers (or, in the case of the initial sale of certain securities, to accredited investors as defined in Rule 501(a) under the 1933 Act), or in a privately negotiated transaction or to a limited number of purchasers, or in limited quantities after they have been held for a specified period of time and other conditions are met pursuant to an exemption from registration.

Private placements and other restricted securities may only be sold in privately negotiated transactions or in a public offering with respect to which a registration statement is in effect under the 1933 Act. Where registration is required, the Funds may be obligated to pay all or part of the registration expenses and a considerable period may elapse between the time of the decision to sell and the time the Funds may be permitted to sell a security under an effective registration statement. If, during such a period, adverse market conditions were to develop, the Funds might obtain a less favorable price than that which prevailed when it decided to sell. Restricted securities issued pursuant to Rule 144A under the 1933 Act that have a readily available market usually are not deemed illiquid for purposes of the limitation on investment in illiquid securities by the Funds discussed below under "Illiquid Securities." However, investing in Rule 144A securities could result in increasing the level of the Funds' illiquidity if qualified institutional buyers become, for a time, uninterested in purchasing these securities.

Investing in private placement and other restricted securities is subject to certain risks. Because there may be relatively few potential purchasers for such securities, especially under adverse market or economic conditions or in the event of adverse changes in the financial condition of the issuer, the Funds could find it more difficult to sell such securities when it may be advisable to do so or it may be able to sell such securities only at prices lower than if such securities were more widely held. At times, it also may be more difficult to determine the fair value of such securities for purposes of computing the Funds' net asset value due to the absence of a trading market.

The Funds intend to limit the purchase of private placements and other restricted securities, together with other securities considered to be illiquid, to not more than 15% of its net assets.

## **LENDING PORTFOLIO SECURITIES**

Consistent with applicable regulatory requirements and the Funds' investment restrictions, the Funds may lend portfolio securities to securities broker-dealers or financial institutions, provided that such loans are callable at any time by the Funds (subject to notice provisions described below), and are at all times secured by cash or cash equivalents, which are maintained in a segregated account pursuant to applicable regulations and that are at least equal to the market value, determined daily, of the loaned securities. The advantage of such loans is that the Funds continue to receive the income on the loaned securities while at the same time earns interest on the cash amounts deposited as collateral, which will be invested in short-term obligations. The Funds will not lend portfolio securities if such loans are not permitted by the laws or regulations of any state in which its shares are qualified for sale. The Funds' loans of portfolio securities will be collateralized in accordance with applicable regulatory requirements and no loan will cause the value of all loaned securities to exceed 33 1/3% of the value of the Funds' total assets.

A loan may generally be terminated by the borrower on one business day's notice, or by the Funds on five business days' notice. If the borrower fails to deliver the loaned securities within five days after receipt of notice or fails to maintain the requisite amount of collateral, the Funds could use the collateral to replace the securities while holding the borrower liable for any excess of replacement cost over collateral. As with any extensions of credit, there are risks of delay in recovery and in some cases even loss of rights in the collateral should the borrower of the securities fail financially. However, these loans of portfolio securities will only be made to firms deemed by the Funds' management to be creditworthy and when the income that can be earned from such loans justifies the attendant risks. Upon termination of the loan, the borrower is required to return the securities to the Funds. Any gain or loss in the market price during the loan period would inure to the Funds. The risks associated with loans of portfolio securities are substantially similar to those associated with repurchase agreements. Thus, if the counterparty to the loan petitions for bankruptcy or becomes subject to the U.S. Bankruptcy Code, the law regarding the rights of the Funds are unsettled. As a result, under extreme circumstances, there may be a restriction on the Funds' ability to sell the collateral, and the Funds would suffer a loss. When voting or consent rights that accompany loaned securities pass to the borrower, the Funds will follow the policy of calling the loaned securities, to be delivered within one day after notice, to permit the exercise of such rights if the matters involved would have a material effect on the Funds' investment in such loaned securities. The Funds will pay reasonable finder's, administrative and custodial fees in connection with a loan of its securities.

## INVESTMENT RESTRICTIONS

---

Each Fund has adopted the following restrictions as fundamental policies, which may not be changed without the favorable “vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding voting securities” of the Fund, as defined in the 1940 Act. Under the 1940 Act, the “vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding voting securities” of the Fund means the vote of the holders of the lesser of (i) 67% of the shares of the Fund represented at a meeting at which the holders of more than 50% of its outstanding shares are represented or (ii) more than 50% of the outstanding shares of the Fund. The Fund’s investment objective is a non-fundamental policy and may be changed without shareholder approval.

Each Fund may not:

1. Issue senior securities, borrow money or pledge its assets, except that (i) the Fund may borrow from banks in amounts not exceeding one-third of its net assets (including the amount borrowed); and (ii) this restriction shall not prohibit the Fund from engaging in options transactions or short sales or investing in financial futures, swaps, when-issued or delayed delivery securities, or reverse repurchase agreements;
2. Act as underwriter, except to the extent the Fund may be deemed to be an underwriter in connection with the sale of securities in its investment portfolio;
3. For all Funds other than the AXS Merger Fund: With respect to 75% of the Fund’s total assets, purchase the securities of any issuer (other than securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government or any of its agencies or instrumentalities) if, as a result, (a) more than 5% of the Fund’s total assets would be invested in the securities of that issuer, or (b) the Fund would hold more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of that issuer;
4. Invest 25% or more of its total assets, calculated at the time of purchase in any one industry, (other than securities issued by the U.S. government, its agencies or instrumentalities) except that the AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund will concentrate to approximately the same extent that its Index concentrates in a particular industry and the AXS Income Opportunities Fund will concentrate in the real estate industry;
5. Purchase or sell real estate or interests in real estate or real estate limited partnerships (although the Fund may purchase and sell securities which are secured by real estate and securities of companies which invest or deal in real estate, such as REITs);
6. Make loans of money, except (a) for purchases of debt securities consistent with the investment policies of the Fund, (b) by engaging in repurchase agreements or, (c) through the loan of portfolio securities in an amount up to 33 1/3% of the Fund’s net assets; or
7. Purchase or sell physical commodities, unless acquired as a result of ownership of securities or other instruments. This limitation shall not prevent the Fund from purchasing, selling or entering into futures contracts, or acquiring securities or other instruments and options thereon backed by, or related to, physical commodities.

Each Fund observes the following restriction as a matter of operating but not fundamental policy, pursuant to positions taken by federal regulatory authorities:

Each Fund may not invest, in the aggregate, more than 15% of its net assets in illiquid securities that the Fund reasonably expects cannot be sold or disposed of in current market conditions in seven calendar days or less without the sale or disposition significantly changing the market value of the securities.

Except with respect to borrowing, if a percentage or rating restriction on investment or use of assets set forth herein or in the Prospectus is adhered to at the time a transaction is effected, later changes in percentage resulting from any cause other than actions by the Fund will not be considered a violation.

## MANAGEMENT OF THE FUND

### Trustees and Officers

The overall management of the business and affairs of the Trust is vested with its Board of Trustees. The Board approves all significant agreements between the Trust and persons or companies furnishing services to it, including the agreements with the Advisor, co-administrators, distributor, custodian and transfer agent. The day-to-day operations of the Trust are delegated to its officers, except that the Advisor are responsible for making day-to-day investment decisions in accordance with each Fund's investment objectives, strategies, and policies, all of which are subject to general supervision by the Board.

The Trustees and officers of the Trust, their years of birth and positions with the Trust, term of office with the Trust and length of time served, their business addresses and principal occupations during the past five years and other directorships held during the past five years are listed in the table below. Unless noted otherwise, each person has held the position listed for a minimum of five years. Thomas Knipper, Kathleen K. Shkuda, Larry D. Tashjian and John P. Zader are all of the Trustees who are not "interested persons" of the Trust, as that term is defined in the 1940 Act (collectively, the "Independent Trustees").

Name, Address, Year of Birth and Position(s) held with Trust	Term of Office <sup>c</sup> and Length of Time Served	Principal Occupation During the Past Five Years and Other Affiliations	Number of Portfolios in the Fund Complex Overseen by Trustee <sup>d</sup>	Other Directorships Held by Trustee <sup>e</sup>
<b>"Independent" Trustees:</b>				
Thomas Knipper, CPA <sup>a</sup> (born 1957) Trustee	Since September 2013	Retired (April 2022 – present); Independent Consulting, financial services organizations (March 2021 – March 2022); Vice President and Chief Compliance Officer, Ameritas Investment Partners, a registered investment advisor (1995 – March 2021).	23	Monachil Credit Income Fund, a closed-end investment company.
Kathleen K. Shkuda <sup>a</sup> (born 1951) Trustee	Since September 2013	Zigzag Consulting, a financial services consulting firm (2008 – present); Director, Managed Accounts, Merrill Lynch (2007 – 2008).	23	None.
Larry D. Tashjian <sup>a</sup> (born 1953) Trustee and Chairman of the Board	Since September 2013	Principal, CAM Capital Advisors, a family office (2001 – present).	23	General Finance Corporation.
John P. Zader <sup>a</sup> (born 1961) Trustee	Since September 2013	Retired (June 2014 – present); CEO, UMB Fund Services, Inc., a mutual fund and hedge fund service provider, and the transfer agent, fund accountant, and co-administrator for the Funds (December 2006 – June 2014); President, Investment Managers Series Trust (December 2007 – June 2014).	23	Investment Managers Series Trust, a registered investment company (includes 53 portfolios).

Name, Address, Year of Birth and Position(s) held with Trust	Term of Office <sup>c</sup> and Length of Time Served	Principal Occupation During the Past Five Years and Other Affiliations	Number of Portfolios in the Fund Complex Overseen by Trustee <sup>d</sup>	Other Directorships Held by Trustee <sup>e</sup>
<b>Interested Trustees:</b>				
Terrance P. Gallagher <sup>a*</sup> (born 1958) Trustee and President	Since July 2019	President, Investment Managers Series Trust II (September 2013 – present); Executive Vice President, UMB Fund Services, Inc. (2007 – present); and Director of Compliance, Unified Fund Services Inc. (now Huntington Fund Services), a mutual fund service provider (2004 – 2007).	23	Cliffwater Corporate Lending Fund, Agility Multi-Asset Income Fund, Corbin Multi-Strategy Fund, LLC, Aspiriant Risk-Managed Real Asset Fund, Aspiriant Risk-Managed Capital Appreciation Fund, AFA Multi-Manager Credit Fund, The Optima Dynamic Alternatives Fund, Infinity Core Alternative Fund, Infinity Long/Short Equity Fund, LLC, Keystone Private Income Fund, Relative Value Fund, Variant Alternative Income Fund, Variant Impact Fund, First Trust Private Assets Fund, First Trust Private Credit Fund, First Trust Real Assets Fund, Destiny Alternative Fund LLC, Destiny Alternative Fund (Tax Exempt) LLC, and Pender Real Estate Credit Fund, each a closed-end investment company.
Joy Ausili <sup>b†</sup> (born 1966) Trustee, Vice President and Assistant Secretary	Since January 2023	Co-Chief Executive Officer (2016 – present), and Vice President (2006 – 2015), Mutual Fund Administration, LLC; Vice President and Assistant Secretary (January 2016 – present), Investment Managers Series Trust II; Vice President and Secretary, Investment Managers Series Trust (March 2016 – present); Co-President, Foothill Capital Management, LLC, a registered investment advisor (2018 – 2022).	23	None



Name, Address, Year of Birth and Position(s) held with Trust	Term of Office <sup>c</sup> and Length of Time Served	Principal Occupation During the Past Five Years and Other Affiliations	Number of Portfolios in the Fund Complex Overseen by Trustee <sup>d</sup>	Other Directorships Held by Trustee <sup>e</sup>
<b>Officers of the Trust:</b>				
Rita Dam <sup>b</sup> (born 1966) Treasurer and Assistant Secretary	Since September 2013	Co-Chief Executive Officer (2016 – present), and Vice President (2006 – 2015), Mutual Fund Administration, LLC; Treasurer and Assistant Secretary, Investment Managers Series Trust (December 2007 – present); Co-President, Foothill Capital Management, LLC, a registered investment advisor (2018 – 2022).	N/A	N/A
Diane Drake <sup>b</sup> (born 1967) Secretary	Since January 2016	Senior Counsel, Mutual Fund Administration, LLC (October 2015 – present); Chief Compliance Officer, Foothill Capital Management, LLC, a registered investment advisor (2018 – 2019).	N/A	N/A
Martin Dziura <sup>b</sup> (born 1959) Chief Compliance Officer	Since September 2013	Principal, Dziura Compliance Consulting, LLC (October 2014 – present); Managing Director, Cipperman Compliance Services (2010 – September 2014); Chief Compliance Officer, Hanlon Investment Management (2009 – 2010); Vice President – Compliance, Morgan Stanley Investment Management (2000 – 2009).	N/A	N/A

a Address for certain Trustees and certain officers: 235 West Galena Street, Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53212.

b Address for Ms. Ausili, Ms. Dam and Ms. Drake: 2220 E. Route 66, Suite 226, Glendora, California 91740.  
Address for Mr. Dziura: 309 Woodridge Lane, Media, Pennsylvania 19063.

c Trustees and officers serve until their successors have been duly elected.

d The Trust is comprised of 37 series managed by unaffiliated investment advisors. Each Trustee serves as Trustee of each series of the Trust. The term “Fund Complex” applies only to the series managed by the same investment advisor. The Funds’ investment advisor also serves as investment advisor to 12 other series in the Trust (collectively, the “AXS Funds”), which are offered in separate prospectuses. The Funds do not hold themselves out as related to any other series within the Trust, for purposes of investment and investor services.

e “Other Directorships Held” includes only directorships of companies required to register or file reports with the SEC under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (that is, “public companies”), or other investment companies registered under the 1940 Act.

† Ms. Ausili is an “interested person” of the Trust by virtue of her position with Mutual Fund Administration, LLC.

\* Mr. Gallagher is an “interested person” of the Trust by virtue of his position with UMB Fund Services, Inc.

Effective January 19, 2023, Eric M. Banhazl, who served as a Trustee of the Trust from September 2013 to January 19, 2023, is serving as a Trustee Emeritus of the Trust. As a Trustee Emeritus, Mr. Banhazl may attend the meetings of the Board of Trustees or any of its committees, but has no duties, powers or responsibilities with respect to the Trust.

### **Compensation**

Effective January 1, 2024, each Independent Trustee receives a quarterly retainer of \$26,000; \$5,000 for each special in-person meeting attended, or any special meeting attended by videoconference or teleconference in lieu of in-person attendance in accordance with SEC exemptive relief or to address particularly complex matters or matters requiring review of significant materials in advance of the meeting; and \$2,000 for each other special meeting attended by videoconference or teleconference at which Board action is taken and/or materials were prepared for review. The Trust has no pension or retirement plan. No other entity affiliated with the Trust pays any compensation to the Trustees.

Prior to January 1, 2024, each Independent Trustee received a quarterly retainer of \$26,000; \$4,000 for each special in-person meeting attended, or any special meeting attended by videoconference or teleconference in lieu of in-person attendance in accordance with SEC exemptive relief or to address particularly complex matters or matters requiring review of significant materials in advance of the meeting; and \$1,500 for any other special meeting attended by videoconference or teleconference at which Board action was taken and/or materials were prepared for review.

The Trustees may elect to defer payment of their compensation pursuant to the Trust's non-qualified Deferred Compensation Plan for Trustees which permits the Trustees to defer receipt of all or part of their compensation. Amounts deferred are deemed invested in shares of one or more series of the Trust, as selected by the Trustee from time to time. A Trustee's deferred compensation account will be paid in cash at such times as elected by the Trustee, subject to certain mandatory payment provisions in the Deferred Compensation Plan. Deferral and payment elections under the Deferred Compensation Plan are subject to strict requirements for modification.

	<b>Independent Trustees</b>			
	<b>Thomas Knipper, Independent Trustee and Audit Committee Chair</b>	<b>Kathleen K. Shkuda, Independent Trustee</b>	<b>Larry D. Tashjian, Independent Trustee, Chairman</b>	<b>John P Zader, Independent Trustee and Nominating Committee Chair</b>
AXS Adaptive Plus Fund <sup>1,4</sup>	\$2,024	\$2,024	\$2,024	\$2,024
AXS Alternative Value Fund <sup>1,4</sup>	\$1,813	\$1,813	\$1,813	\$1,813
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund <sup>1,4</sup>	\$2,450	\$2,450	\$2,450	\$2,450
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund <sup>2</sup>	\$2,862	\$2,862	\$2,862	\$2,862
AXS Income Opportunities Fund	\$2,569	\$2,569	\$2,569	\$2,569
AXS Market Neutral Fund <sup>1,4</sup>	\$1,859	\$1,859	\$1,859	\$1,859
AXS Merger Fund <sup>1,4</sup>	\$2,040	\$2,040	\$2,040	\$2,040
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund <sup>1,4</sup>	\$1,790	\$1,790	\$1,790	\$1,790
AXS Sustainable Income Fund <sup>1,4</sup>	\$1,595	\$1,595	\$1,595	\$1,595
AXS Tactical Income Fund <sup>2</sup>	\$1,914	\$1,914	\$1,914	\$1,914
AXS FTSE <sup>1,4</sup> Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$3,160	\$3,160	\$3,160	\$3,160
Pension or Retirement Benefits Accrued as Part of Fund's Expenses <sup>4</sup>	None	None	None	None
Estimated Annual Benefits Upon Retirement	None	None	None	None
Total Compensation from Fund and Fund Complex Paid to Trustees <sup>1,2,3,4</sup>	\$68,568	\$68,568	\$68,568	\$68,568

1 For the fiscal year ended September 30, 2023.

- 2 Estimated annual compensation for the first year.
- 3 There are currently numerous portfolios comprising the Trust. The term “Fund Complex” applies only to the series managed by the same investment advisor. The Funds’ investment advisor also serves as investment advisor to the AXS Funds, which are series of the Trust offered in separate prospectuses. The Funds do not hold themselves out as related to any other series within the Trust, for purposes of investment and investor services. For the Funds’ fiscal year ended September 30, 2023, the aggregate Independent Trustees’ fees for the Trust were \$388,000.
- 4 Messrs. Tashjian, Knipper and Zader each elected to defer payment of his compensation under the non-qualified Deferred Compensation Plan for Trustees under which Trustees may defer receipt of all or part of their compensation. As of September 30, 2023, the total amount of deferred compensation payable to Messrs. Knipper, Tashjian and Zader was \$71,099, \$189,316 and \$34,918, respectively.

Mr. Gallagher and Ms. Ausili are not compensated for their service as Trustees because of their affiliation with the Trust. Officers of the Trust are not compensated by the Fund for their services.

As a Trustee Emeritus of the Trust, Mr. Banhazl does not receive any compensation from the Trust; however, he is entitled to reimbursement of expenses related to his attendance at any meetings of the Board of Trustees or its committees.

#### **Additional Information Concerning the Board and the Trustees**

The current Trustees were selected in September 2013 (July 2019 for Mr. Gallagher and January 2023 for Ms. Ausili) with a view towards establishing a Board that would have the broad experience needed to oversee a registered investment company comprised of multiple series employing a variety of different investment strategies. As a group, the Board has extensive experience in many different aspects of the financial services and asset management industries.

The Trustees were selected to join the Board based upon the following factors, among others: character and integrity; willingness to serve and willingness and ability to commit the time necessary to perform the duties of a Trustee; as to each Trustee other than Ms. Ausili, Mr. Gallagher and Mr. Zader (at that time), satisfying the criteria for not being classified as an “interested person” of the Trust as defined in the 1940 Act; as to Ms. Ausili and Mr. Gallagher, their positions with Mutual Fund Administration, LLC, and UMB Fund Services, Inc., respectively, the Trust’s co-administrators. In addition, the Trustees have the following specific experience, qualifications, attributes and/or skills relevant to the operations of the Trust:

- Mr. Knipper has substantial experience with respect to the operation, administration and compliance programs of mutual funds and as a senior executive with a registered investment advisor.
- Ms. Shkuda has substantial experience in the investment management industry, including as a consultant with respect to operations and marketing of investment managers and distribution of mutual funds and other investment products.
- Mr. Tashjian has extensive leadership experience in the investment management industry, including as a principal and a chief executive officer of a registered investment advisor.
- Mr. Zader has substantial experience serving in senior executive positions at mutual fund administration service providers.
- Mr. Gallagher has substantial experience serving in senior executive positions at mutual fund administration service providers.
- Ms. Ausili has substantial experience serving in senior executive positions at mutual fund administration service providers.

In its periodic self-assessment of the effectiveness of the Board, the Board considers the complementary individual skills and experience of the individual Trustees primarily in the broader context of the Board’s overall composition so that the Board, as a body, possesses the appropriate (and appropriately diverse) skills and experience to oversee the business of the Fund. The summaries set forth above as to the qualifications, attributes and skills of the Trustees are required by

the registration form adopted by the SEC, do not constitute holding out the Board or any Trustee as having any special expertise or experience, and do not impose any greater responsibility or liability on any such person or on the Board as a whole than would otherwise be the case.

The Board of Trustees has two standing committees: the Audit Committee and the Nominating, Governance and Regulatory Review Committee (the “Nominating Committee”).

- The function of the Audit Committee, with respect to each series of the Trust, is to review the scope and results of the series’ annual audit and any matters bearing on the audit or the series’ financial statements and to assist the Board’s oversight of the integrity of the series’ pricing and financial reporting. The Audit Committee is comprised of all of the Independent Trustees and is chaired by Mr. Knipper. It does not include any Interested Trustees. The Audit Committee is expected to meet at least twice a year with respect to each series of the Trust. The Audit Committee met twice during the fiscal year ended September 30, 2023, with respect to the Funds.

The Audit Committee also serves as the Qualified Legal Compliance Committee (“QLCC”) for the Trust for the purpose of compliance with Rules 205.2(k) and 205.3(c) of the Code of Federal Regulations regarding alternative reporting procedures for attorneys retained or employed by an issuer who appear and practice before the SEC on behalf of the issuer.

- The Nominating Committee is responsible for reviewing matters pertaining to composition, committees, and operations of the Board, as well as assisting the Board in overseeing matters related to certain regulatory issues. The Nominating Committee meets from time to time as needed. The Nominating Committee will consider trustee nominees properly recommended by the Trust’s shareholders. Shareholders who wish to recommend a nominee should send nominations that include, among other things, biographical data and the qualifications of the proposed nominee to the Trust’s Secretary. The Independent Trustees comprise the Nominating Committee, and the Committee is chaired by Mr. Zader. The Nominating Committee met once during the fiscal year ended September 30, 2023.

Independent Trustees comprise 67% of the Board and Larry Tashjian, an Independent Trustee, serves as Chairperson of the Board. The Chairperson serves as a key point person for dealings between the Trust’s management and the other Independent Trustees. As noted above, through the committees of the Board the Independent Trustees consider and address important matters involving each series of the Trust, including those presenting conflicts or potential conflicts of interest. The Independent Trustees also regularly meet outside the presence of management and are advised by independent legal counsel. The Board has determined that its organization and leadership structure are appropriate in light of its fiduciary and oversight obligations, the special obligations of the Independent Trustees, and the relationship between the Interested Trustees and the Trust’s co-administrators. The Board also believes that its structure facilitates the orderly and efficient flow of information to the Independent Trustees from management.

Consistent with its responsibility for oversight of the Funds in the interests of shareholders, the Board among other things oversees risk management of the Funds’ investment programs and business affairs directly and through the Audit Committee. The Board has emphasized to the Advisor the importance of maintaining vigorous risk management programs and procedures.

The Funds face a number of risks, such as investment risk, valuation risk, reputational risk, risk of operational failure or lack of business continuity, and legal, compliance and regulatory risk. Risk management seeks to identify and address risks, i.e., events or circumstances that could have material adverse effects on the business, operations, shareholder services, investment performance or reputation of the Funds. Under the overall supervision of the Board, the Advisor, and other service providers to the Funds employ a variety of processes, procedures and controls to identify various of those possible events or circumstances, to lessen the probability of their occurrence and/or to mitigate the effects of such events or circumstances if they do occur. Different processes, procedures and controls are employed with respect to different types of risks. Various personnel, including the Trust’s Chief Compliance Officer (the “CCO”), the Advisor’s management, and other service providers (such as each Fund’s independent registered public accounting firm) make periodic reports to the Board or to the Audit Committee with respect to various aspects of risk management. The Board recognizes that not all risks that may affect a Fund can be identified, that it may not be practical or cost-effective

to eliminate or mitigate certain risks, that it may be necessary to bear certain risks (such as investment-related risks) to achieve a Fund's investment objective, and that the processes, procedures and controls employed to address certain risks may be limited in their effectiveness. Moreover, reports received by the Trustees as to risk management matters are typically summaries of the relevant information. As a result of the foregoing and other factors, the Board's risk management oversight is subject to substantial limitations.

**Fund Shares Beneficially Owned by Trustees**

Certain information regarding ownership by the Trustees of the Funds and other series of the Trust, as of December 31, 2023, is set forth in the following table.

Name of Trustee	Dollar Range of Equity Securities in the Funds (\$)	Aggregate Dollar Range of Equity Securities in all Registered Investment Companies Overseen by Trustee in Family of Investment Companies (\$)
Larry Tashjian, Independent Trustee	None	None
Kathy Shkuda, Independent Trustee	None	None
Thomas Knipper, Independent Trustee	None	None
John P. Zader, Independent Trustee	None	None
Terrance P. Gallagher, Interested Trustee	None	None
Joy Ausili, Interested Trustee	None	None

**Control Persons, Principal Shareholders, and Management Ownership**

The following table lists the control persons of the Funds as of January 2, 2024. A control person is one who owns beneficially or through controlled companies more than 25% of the voting securities of a Fund or acknowledges the existence of control<sup>1</sup>. Shareholders with a controlling interest could affect the outcome of voting or the direction of management of a Fund.

Control Persons	Jurisdiction	% of Total Outstanding Shares of the Fund as of January 2, 2024
<b>AXS Adaptive Plus Fund</b>		
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94105	California	44.34%
<b>AXS Alternative Value Fund</b>		
SEI Private Trust Company Oaks, PA 19456	Georgia	37.95%
<b>AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund</b>		
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94105	California	43.99%
<b>AXS Market Neutral Fund</b>		
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	California	26.30%
<b>AXS Merger Fund</b>		
Interactive Brokers LLC Greenwich, CT 06830	Connecticut	42.15%

<b>Control Persons</b>	<b>Jurisdiction</b>	<b>% of Total Outstanding Shares of the Fund as of January 2, 2024</b>
<b>AXS Sustainable Income Fund</b>		
SEI Private Trust Company Oaks, PA 19456	Georgia	37.02%
<b>AXS Tactical Income Fund</b>		
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94105	California	27.25%
<b>AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund</b>		
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	California	32.40%

- 1 The Funds have no information regarding the beneficial owners of Fund shares owned through accounts with financial intermediaries.

The following table lists the principal shareholders of the Funds as of January 2, 2024. The principal shareholders are holders of record of 5% or more of the outstanding shares of the indicated classes of the Funds, including the listed shareholders that are financial intermediaries.<sup>1</sup>

<b>Principal Shareholders</b>	<b>% of Total Outstanding Shares of the Class as of January 2, 2024</b>
<b>AXS Adaptive Plus Fund – Class I</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94105	88.68%
National Financial Services LLC Jersey City, NJ 07310	5.05%
<b>AXS Alternative Value Fund – Class I</b>	
SEI Private Trust Company Oaks, PA 19456	43.30%
National Financial Services LLC Jersey City, NJ 07310	21.02%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94105	20.64%
US Bank National Association Milwaukee, WI 53212	10.74%
<b>AXS Alternative Value Fund – Investor Class</b>	
National Financial Services LLC Jersey City, NJ 07310	72.26%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94105	26.31%
<b>AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund – Class A</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	38.39%
Raymond James Saint Petersburg, FL 33716	19.75%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	11.07%
Morgan Stanley Smith Barney LLC New York, NY 10004	6.21%
<b>AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund – Class C</b>	
Raymond James Saint Petersburg, FL 33716	58.67%
UBS WM USA Weehawken, NJ 07086	7.50%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	6.47%
<b>AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund – Class I</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	42.82%

	<b>% of Total Outstanding Shares of the Class as of January 2, 2024</b>
<b>Principal Shareholders</b>	
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	7.92%
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	7.34%
<b>AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund – Class A</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	67.25%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	21.70%
Constellation Trust Co Corona, CA 92883	5.19%
<b>AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund – Class I</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	88.71%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	6.29%
<b>AXS Income Opportunities Fund – Class A</b>	
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	24.87%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	17.20%
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	12.05%
<b>AXS Income Opportunities Fund – Class D</b>	
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	21.58%
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	19.59%
<b>AXS Income Opportunities Fund – Class I</b>	
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	45.63%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	25.38%
<b>AXS Market Neutral Fund – Investor Class</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	38.09%
National Financial Services LLC Jersey City, NJ 07310	11.00%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	10.29%
<b>AXS Market Neutral Fund – Class I</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	37.26%
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	27.94%
SEI Private Trust Company Oaks, PA 19456	13.18%
<b>AXS Merger Fund – Class I</b>	
Interactive Brokers LLC Greenwich, CT 06830	43.46%
National Financial Services LLC Jersey City, NJ 07310	27.25%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	23.10%
<b>AXS Merger Fund – Investor Class</b>	
Hitherlane Partners LLC c/o Kellner Capital New York, NY 10022	42.47%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	31.33%
National Financial Services LLC Jersey City, NJ 07310	11.11%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	7.30%
<b>AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund – Class I</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc. San Francisco, CA 94104	16.15%
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	11.19%
National Financial Services LLC Jersey City, NJ 07310	9.40%

	<b>% of Total Outstanding Shares of the Class as of January 2, 2024</b>
<b>Principal Shareholders</b>	
William Brian Bevins Aventura, FL 33160	9.26%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	9.18%
<b>AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund – Investor Class</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc. San Francisco, CA 94104	12.24%
Mid Atlantic Trust Company Pittsburgh, PA 15222	9.88%
Morgan Stanley Smith Barney LLC New York, NY 10004	8.02%
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	6.18%
<b>AXS Sustainable Income Fund – Class I</b>	
SEI Private Trust Company Oaks, PA 19456	37.02%
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	12.25%
<b>AXS Tactical Income Fund – Class A</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	60.69%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	36.34%
<b>AXS Tactical Income Fund – Class I</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	82.84%
SEI Private Trust Company Oaks, PA 19456	5.75%
<b>AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund – Class A</b>	
Charles Schwab & Co. Inc San Francisco, CA 94104	49.31%
Morgan Stanley Smith Barney LLC New York, NY 10004	15.75%
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	10.14%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	5.79%
<b>AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund – Class C</b>	
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	29.02%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	11.86%
<b>AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund – Class I</b>	
LPL Financial San Diego, CA 92121	37.39%
Lamb Company LLC Chicago, IL 60611	24.15%
Pershing LLC Jersey City, NJ 07399	14.05%

1 The Fund has no information regarding the beneficial owners of Fund shares owned through accounts with financial intermediaries.

As of January 2, 2024, the Trustees and officers of the Trust as a group did not own more than 1% of the outstanding shares of the Funds. Furthermore, neither the Independent Trustees, nor members of their immediate families, own securities beneficially or of record in the Advisor, the Sub-Advisors, the Fund’s distributor, ALPS Distributors Inc. (the “Distributor”), or any of their respective affiliates.

### **The Advisor**

AXS Investments LLC (the “Advisor” or “AXS”), located at 181 Westchester Avenue, Suite 402, Port Chester, New York 10573, acts as investment advisor to the Funds pursuant to an Investment Advisory Agreement (the “Advisory Agreement”). Subject to such policies as the Board of Trustees may determine, the Advisor is ultimately responsible for investment decisions for the Funds. Pursuant to the terms of the Advisory Agreement, the Advisor provides the Funds with such investment advice and supervision as it deems necessary for the proper supervision of each Fund’s investments. The Advisor also continuously monitors and maintains each Fund’s investment criteria and determines from time to time what securities may be purchased by the Funds. AXS Investments LLC is wholly owned by AXS Holdings LLC. AXS Holdings LLC is ultimately controlled by Gregory Bassuk.



The Advisory Agreement will remain in effect for an initial two-year period. After the initial two-year period, the Advisory Agreement will continue in effect with respect to a Fund from year to year only if such continuance is specifically approved at least annually by the Board or by vote of a majority of the Funds' outstanding voting securities and by a majority of the Trustees who are not parties to the Advisory Agreement or interested persons of any such party, at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on the Advisory Agreement. The Advisory Agreement is terminable without penalty by the Trust on behalf of the Funds, upon giving the Advisor 60 days' notice when authorized either by a majority vote of the Funds' shareholders or by a vote of a majority of the Board, or by the Advisor on 60 days' written notice, and will automatically terminate in the event of its "assignment" (as defined in the 1940 Act). The Advisory Agreement provides that the Advisor shall not be liable for any error of judgment or for any loss suffered by the Trust in connection with the Advisory Agreement, except for a loss resulting from a breach of fiduciary duty, or for a loss resulting from willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence in the performance of its duties, or from reckless disregard by the Advisor of its duties under the Advisory Agreement.

In consideration of the services to be provided by the Advisor pursuant to the Advisory Agreement, the Advisor is entitled to receive from each Fund an investment advisory fee computed daily and paid twice a month based on an annual rate equal to a percentage of the Fund's average daily net assets specified in the Prospectus.

#### **The Sub-Advisor for AXS Alternative Value Fund and AXS Market Neutral Fund**

The Advisor has entered into a sub-advisory agreement with Cognios Capital with respect to each Fund (the "Cognios Sub-Advisory Agreement"). Cognios Capital commenced operations in February 2020 and has its principal place of business at 3965 W. 83<sup>rd</sup> Street, #348, Prairie Village, Kansas 66208. Cognios Capital is an SEC-registered investment advisor. Quantitative Value Technologies, LLC d/b/a Cognios Capital is owned 50%/50% by the Jonathan Angrist Revocable Trust and the Brian J. Machtley Living Trust.

#### **The Sub-Advisor for AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund**

The Advisor has entered into a sub-advisory agreement with Chesapeake with respect to the AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund (the "Chesapeake Sub-Advisory Agreement"). Chesapeake is an SEC-registered investment advisor and CFTC-registered commodity trading advisor and commodity pool operator, with its principal place of business at 100 South Ashley Drive, Suite 1140, Tampa, Florida 33602. Chesapeake manages capital for investment companies, other pooled investment vehicles, pension plans, charitable organizations, state or municipal government entities, and insurance companies, among other clients. Chesapeake is controlled by Chesapeake Holding Company through such entity's ownership interest in Chesapeake. Chesapeake Holding Company is controlled by Jerry Parker.

#### **The Sub-Advisor for AXS Merger Fund**

The Advisor has entered into a sub-advisory agreement with Kellner Management with respect to the Fund (the "Kellner Sub-Advisory Agreement"). Kellner Management was founded by George A. Kellner with its principal place of business at 900 Third Avenue, suite 1401, New York, New York 10022. Kellner Management is an SEC-registered investment advisor. Kellner is controlled by George A. Kellner.

#### **The Sub-Advisor for AXS Sustainable Income Fund**

The Advisor has entered into a sub-advisory agreement with each of Green Alpha (the "Green Alpha Sub-Advisory Agreement") and Uniplan (the "Uniplan Sub-Advisory Agreement") with respect to the Fund. Green Alpha is a Colorado limited liability company established in 2007 with its principal place of business at 287 Century Circle, Suite 201, Louisville, Colorado 80027. Green Alpha is an SEC-registered investment advisor. Green Alpha is controlled by Jeremy W. Deems and Garvin F. Jabusch.

Uniplan is a Wisconsin "C" corporation established in 1984 with its principal place of business at 839 N. Jefferson St., Suite 502, Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53202. Uniplan is controlled by Richard Imperiale and Kris Jamison.

#### **Sub-Advisory Agreements**

Each Sub-Advisory Agreement will remain in effect for an initial two-year period. After the initial two-year period, each Sub-Advisory Agreement will continue in effect with respect to the relevant Fund from year to year only as long as such continuance is specifically approved at least annually by (i) the Board of Trustees of the Trust or by the vote of a

majority of the outstanding voting shares of the Fund, and (ii) by the vote of a majority of the Trustees of the Trust who are not parties to the Sub-Advisory Agreement or interested persons of the Advisor, the Sub-Advisor or the Trust. Each Sub-Advisory Agreement may be terminated at any time without the payment of any penalty by the Board of Trustees of the Trust or by the vote of a majority of the outstanding voting shares of the relevant Fund, or by the Sub-Advisor or the Advisor, upon 60 days' written notice to the other party. Additionally, each Sub-Advisory Agreement automatically terminates in the event of its assignment. Each Sub-Advisory Agreement provides that the Sub-Advisor shall not be liable for any error of judgment or for any loss suffered by the Trust in connection with the Sub-Advisory Agreement, except for a loss resulting from a breach of fiduciary duty, or for a loss resulting from willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence in the performance of its duties, or from reckless disregard by the Sub-Advisor of its duties under the Sub-Advisory Agreement.

### **Fund Expenses**

Each Fund is responsible for its own operating expenses (all of which will be borne directly or indirectly by the Funds' shareholders), including among others, legal fees and expenses of counsel to the Funds and the Funds' Independent Trustees; insurance (including Trustees' and officers' errors and omissions insurance); auditing and accounting expenses; taxes and governmental fees; listing fees; dues and expenses incurred in connection with membership in investment company organizations; fees and expenses of the Funds' custodians, administrators, transfer agents, registrars and other service providers; expenses for portfolio pricing services by a pricing agent, if any; expenses in connection with the issuance and offering of shares; expenses relating to investor and public relations; expenses of registering or qualifying securities of the Funds' for public sale; brokerage commissions and other costs of acquiring or disposing of any portfolio holding of the Funds; expenses of preparation and distribution of reports, notices and dividends to shareholders; expenses of the dividend reinvestment plan; compensation and expenses of Trustees; any litigation expenses; and costs of shareholders' and other meetings.

The Advisor has contractually agreed to waive its fees and/or pay for operating expenses of each Fund to ensure that the total annual Fund operating expenses (excluding, as applicable, any taxes, leverage interest, brokerage commissions, dividend expenses on short sales, acquired fund fees and expenses as determined in accordance with Form N-1A, expenses incurred in connection with any merger or reorganization, and extraordinary expenses such as litigation expenses) do not exceed the limit set forth in the Expense Table in the Prospectus (the "expense cap"). This agreement is effective until January 31, 2025, with respect to each Fund. The agreement may be terminated before that date with respect to a Fund only by the Board of Trustees. The Advisor is permitted to seek reimbursement from each Fund, subject to certain limitations, of fees waived or payments made to the Fund for a period ending three full years after the date of the waiver or payment. In each case, any such reimbursement may be requested from a Fund if the reimbursement will not cause the Fund's annual expense ratio to exceed the lesser of (a) the expense limitation in effect at the time such fees were waived or payments made, or (b) the expense limitation in effect at the time of the reimbursement.

With respect to each of the AXS Alternative Value Fund and AXS Market Neutral Fund, Cognios Capital is permitted to seek reimbursement from each Fund, subject to certain limitations, of fees waived or payments made by Cognios Capital to the Predecessor Fund prior to the reorganization, for a period ending three years after the date of the waiver or payment. In each case, the reimbursement may be requested from a Fund if the reimbursement will not cause the Fund's annual expense ratio to exceed the lesser of (a) the expense limitation in effect at the time such fees were waived or payments made, and (b) the expense limitation in effect at the time of the reimbursement. Reimbursements of fees waived or payments made will be made on a "first in, first out" basis so that the oldest fees waived or payments are satisfied first. However, the reimbursement amount may not exceed the total amount of fees waived and/or Fund expenses paid by the Advisor and will not include any amounts previously reimbursed to the Advisor by the Fund. Any such reimbursement is contingent upon the Board's subsequent review of the reimbursed amounts. Each Fund must pay current ordinary operating expenses before the Advisor or Cognios Capital is entitled to any reimbursement of fees and/or Fund expenses.

Fund	Expense Cap as percent of the average daily net assets				
	Class A	Class C	Class I	Class D	Investor Class
AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	N/A	N/A	1.99%	N/A	2.24%
AXS Alternative Value Fund	N/A	N/A	0.85%	N/A	1.10%
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	2.10%	2.85%	1.85%	N/A	N/A
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	2.40%	N/A	2.15%	N/A	N/A
AXS Income Opportunities Fund	1.65%	N/A	1.40%	2.40%	N/A
AXS Market Neutral Fund	N/A	N/A	1.45%	N/A	1.70%
AXS Merger Fund	N/A	N/A	1.50%	N/A	1.75%
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	N/A	N/A	1.51%	N/A	1.68%
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	1.24%	N/A	0.99%	N/A	N/A
AXS Tactical Income Fund	2.25%	N/A	2.00%	N/A	N/A
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	1.75%	2.50%	1.50%	N/A	N/A

The Funds paid the following advisory fees to the Advisor and the Predecessor Fund's advisor, as applicable, for the periods indicated:

	Advisory Fees Accrued	Advisory Fees (Waived)/Recouped	Advisory Fee Retained
<b>For the fiscal year ended September 30, 2023</b>			
AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	\$321,916	\$(68,537)	\$253,379
AXS Alternative Value Fund	\$142,151	\$(139,882)	\$2,269
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$826,793	\$(252,712)	\$574,081
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	\$614,998	\$0	\$614,998
AXS Income Opportunities Fund	\$57,085	\$(28,256)	\$28,829
AXS Market Neutral Fund	\$326,747	\$(188,797)	\$137,950
AXS Merger Fund	\$491,526	\$(202,747)	\$288,779
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	\$181,699	\$(132,804)	\$48,895
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	\$15,918	\$(15,918)	\$0
AXS Tactical Income Fund	\$310,809	\$0	\$310,809
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$1,377,006	\$(243,172)	\$1,133,834
<b>For the fiscal year ended August 31, 2023</b>			
AXS Income Opportunities Fund	\$964,350	\$(117,609)	\$846,741
<b>For the fiscal year ended September 30, 2022</b>			
AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	\$2,018	\$(2,018)	\$0
AXS Alternative Value Fund	\$74,170	\$(72,072)	\$2,098
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$518,086	\$(172,227)	\$345,859
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund <sup>3,8</sup>	\$1,089,572	\$0	\$1,089,572
AXS Income Opportunities Fund <sup>7</sup>	\$1,614,836	\$(89,686)	\$1,525,150
AXS Market Neutral Fund	\$193,864	\$(106,381)	\$87,483
AXS Merger Fund	\$823,858	\$(194,688)	\$629,170
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	\$198,341	\$(84,473)	\$113,868
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	\$129,918	\$(129,918)	\$0
AXS Tactical Income Fund <sup>3,8</sup>	\$533,934	\$0	\$533,934
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$2,977,528	\$(746,554)	\$2,230,974

	Advisory Fees Accrued	Advisory Fees (Waived)/Recouped	Advisory Fee Retained
<b>For the fiscal year ended September 30, 2021</b>			
AXS Alternative Value Fund	\$2,264	\$(2,264)	\$0
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$260,763	\$(217,024)	\$43,739
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund <sup>3,8</sup>	\$1,296,877	\$0	\$1,296,877
AXS Income Opportunities Fund <sup>3,7</sup>	\$1,840,514	\$53,072	\$1,893,586
AXS Market Neutral Fund	\$38,717	\$(27,485)	\$11,232
AXS Merger Fund	\$748,729	\$(115,647)	\$633,082
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	\$260,987	\$(105,332)	\$155,655
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	\$345,865	\$(53,753)	\$292,112
AXS Tactical Income Fund <sup>3,8</sup>	\$588,963	\$0	\$588,963
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$3,532,005	\$(246,853)	\$3,285,152

- 1 For the period of December 1, 2020 through March 5, 2021, AXS received investment management fees for their services pursuant to the terms of the investment advisory agreements for the Predecessor Funds.
- 2 For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2020.
- 3 Reflects the dollar amount of fees accrued with respect to the Predecessor Fund, the amount of fees waived and/or expenses reimbursed by the Predecessor Fund's advisor, and the actual fees retained by the Predecessor Fund's advisor.
- 4 For the fiscal year ended October 31, 2019.
- 5 For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2019.
- 6 For the fiscal year ended April 30, 2019.
- 7 For the fiscal year ended August 31.
- 8 For the fiscal year ended December 31.

### **Portfolio Managers**

As of September 30, 2023, information on other accounts managed by the Funds' portfolio managers is as follows.

Portfolio Managers	Registered Investment Companies		Other Pooled Investment Vehicles		Other Accounts	
	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)
Parker Binion	8	\$619.65	0	\$0	0	\$0
Travis Trampe	9	\$738.10	0	\$0	0	\$0
Ian Goltra	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Jordan Kahn	0	\$0	1	\$2.33	2,807	\$1,374.50
Alan Savoian	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Eric Hua	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Jerry Parker	1	\$50.12	1	\$82.95	0	\$0
Michael L. Ivie	0	\$0	0	\$0	2	\$11.62
Richard Imperiale	0	\$0	0	\$0	3,734	\$1,337.8

Portfolio Managers	Registered Investment Companies		Other Pooled Investment Vehicles		Other Accounts	
	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)
Jonathan C. Angrist	0	\$0	1	\$2	11	\$106
Brian J. Machtley	0	\$0	1	\$2	11	\$106
George Kellner	0	\$0	1	\$34.90	1	\$21.30
Christopher Pultz	0	\$0	2	\$115.40	1	\$21.30

Portfolio Managers	Number of Accounts with Advisory Fee Based on Performance					
	Registered Investment Companies		Other Pooled Investment Vehicles		Other Accounts	
	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)	Number of Accounts	Total Assets (in millions)
Parker Binion	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Travis Trampe	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Ian Goltra	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Jordan Kahn	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Alan Savoian	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Eric Hua	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Jerry Parker	0	\$0	1	\$82.95	0	\$0
Michael L. Ivie	0	\$0	0	\$0	1	\$9.40
Richard Imperiale	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Jonathan C. Angrist	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
Brian J. Machtley	0	\$0	0	\$0	0	\$0
George Kellner	0	\$0	1	\$34.90	1	\$21.30
Christopher Pultz	0	\$0	2	\$115.40	1	\$221.30

**Material Conflicts of Interest.** Actual or apparent conflicts of interest may arise when a portfolio manager has day-to-day management responsibilities with respect to more than one fund or other account. Where conflicts of interest arise between a Fund and other accounts managed by a portfolio manager, the Advisor will proceed in a manner that ensures that the Fund will not be treated less favorably than the other accounts. There may be instances where similar portfolio transactions may be executed for the same security for numerous accounts managed by the portfolio manager. In such instances, securities will be allocated in accordance with the Advisor's trade allocation policy.

**Compensation.** Messrs. Binion and Trampe are compensated by the Advisor. Each receive a fixed base salary and discretionary bonus. The portfolio managers' compensation arrangements are not determined on the basis of specific funds or accounts managed.

Michael L. Ivie and Jerry Parker are compensated by Chesapeake. Each receives a fixed base salary and participates in Chesapeake's overall profitability, not the profitability of a single client or strategy.

Jonathan C. Angrist and Brian J. Machtley are compensated by Cognios Capital. The portfolio managers are responsible for the day-to-day management of the Funds and are compensated with a base salary, plus a discretionary bonus when and if the company is sufficiently profitable to make such payments. The bonus is determined by the business unit's revenue and profitability as well as the individual's contribution to the business unit. The bonus is discretionary and is not based specifically on portfolio performance.

George Kellner and Christopher Pultz are compensated by Kellner. Mr. Kellner is paid a base salary and as a majority member, shares in the net income of the Sub-Advisor. Mr. Pultz is paid a base salary. For portfolios managed that generate an incentive fee, Mr. Pultz shares in the incentive fees earned. For portfolios managed that generate management fees, such as the Fund, Mr. Pultz shares in the management fees earned, net of certain expenses.

Richard Imperiale is compensated by Uniplan. Mr. Imperiale receives a competitive base compensation package along with a bonus package, which is contingent upon the overall success of the firm and Mr. Imperiale’s individual contribution to the firm’s performance and is not directly contingent upon the performance of the AXS Sustainable Income Fund.

**Ownership of the Funds by Portfolio Managers.** The following chart sets forth the dollar range of shares owned by each portfolio manager in the Funds as the date of this SAI.

Dollar Range of Securities in the Funds (A: None, B: \$1-\$10,000, C: \$10,001-\$50,000, D: \$50,001-\$100,000, E: \$100,001-\$500,000, F: \$500,001-\$1,000,000, G: Over \$1,000,000)											
AXS Funds											
	AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	AXS Alternative Value Fund	AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	AXS Income Opportunities Fund	AXS Market Neutral Fund	AXS Merger Fund	AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	AXS Sustainable Income Fund	AXS Tactical Income Fund	AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund
Parker Binion	A			A	A			E		A	A
Travis Trampe	A				A						A
Ian Goltra					E						
Jordan Kahn										E	
Alan Savoian				G							
Eric Hua				E						A	
Jerry Parker			A								
Michael L. Ivie			F								
Richard Imperiale									A		
Jonathan C. Angrist		E				E					
Brian J. Machtley		F				E					
George Kellner							G				
Christopher Pultz							E				

**Organization and Management of the Subsidiary**

AXS is responsible for the Subsidiary’s day-to-day business pursuant to an investment advisory agreement between the Subsidiary and AXS (the “Subsidiary Investment Advisory Agreement”). The Subsidiary Investment Advisory Agreement provides for automatic termination upon the termination of the investment advisory agreement with respect to the AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund. Additionally, AXS delegates elements of the management of the Subsidiary’s portfolio to Chesapeake pursuant to a sub-advisory agreement. AXS pays Chesapeake a fee for its services. AXS has contractually agreed, for so long as the Fund invests in its Subsidiary, to waive the management fee it receives from the Fund in an amount equal to the management fee paid to AXS by the Subsidiary. This undertaking will continue in effect for so long as the Fund invests in its Subsidiary and may not be terminated by AXS unless AXS first obtains the prior approval of the Board of Trustees for such termination. The Subsidiary has entered into separate contracts for the provision of custody, fund accounting, and fund administration services with UMB Fund Services, Inc. The Fund will also bear the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the custody, fund accounting, fund administration and audit services that its Subsidiary receives. The expenses of the Subsidiary are not expected to be material in relation to the value of the Fund’s assets and are consolidated into the expenses of the Fund.

**Manager of Managers Structure**

AXS and the Trust have received an exemptive order from the SEC for the Funds which allows AXS to operate the Funds under a “manager of managers” structure (the “Order”). Pursuant to the Order, AXS may, subject to the approval of the Board, to hire or replace sub-advisors and modify any existing or future agreement with such sub-advisors without obtaining shareholder approval.

### Service Providers

Pursuant to a Co-Administration Agreement (the “Co-Administration Agreement”), UMB Fund Services, Inc. (“UMBFS”), 235 West Galena Street, Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53212, and Mutual Fund Administration, LLC (“MFAC”), 2220 E. Route 66, Suite 226, Glendora, California 91740 (collectively the “Co-Administrators”), act as co-administrators for the Funds. The Co-Administrators provide certain administrative services to the Funds, including, among other responsibilities, coordinating the negotiation of contracts and fees with, and the monitoring of performance and billing of, the Funds’ independent contractors and agents; preparing for signature by an officer of the Trust of all documents required to be filed for compliance with applicable laws and regulations including those of the securities laws of various states; arranging for the computation of performance data, including net asset value and yield; arranging for the maintenance of books and records of the Funds; and providing, at their own expense, office facilities, equipment and personnel necessary to carry out their duties. In this capacity, the Co-Administrators do not have any responsibility or authority for the management of the Funds, the determination of investment policy, or for any matter pertaining to the distribution of Fund shares. The Co-Administration Agreement provides that neither Co-Administrator shall be liable for any error of judgment or mistake of law or for any loss suffered by the Trust or its series, except for losses resulting from a Co-Administrator’s willful misfeasance, bad faith or negligence in the performance of its duties or from reckless disregard by it of its obligations and duties under the Agreement.

Pursuant to the Co-Administration Agreement, each Fund pays the Co-Administrators a fee for administration services. The fee is payable monthly based on the Fund’s average daily net assets.

The Funds paid the following co-administration fees for the periods indicated:

	<b>Co-Administration Fees*</b>
<b>For the fiscal year ended September 30, 2023</b>	
AXS Adaptive Plus Fund <sup>‡</sup>	\$43,691
AXS Alternative Value Fund	\$63,679
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$164,427
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund <sup>1</sup>	\$87,465
AXS Income Opportunities Fund <sup>2</sup>	\$12,837
AXS Market Neutral Fund	\$67,114
AXS Merger Fund	\$97,972
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	\$63,340
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	\$14,424
AXS Tactical Income Fund <sup>1</sup>	\$55,296
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$164,636
<b>For the fiscal year ended August 31, 2023</b>	
AXS Income Opportunities Fund <sup>3</sup>	\$195,569
<b>For the fiscal year ended September 30, 2022</b>	
AXS Adaptive Plus Fund <sup>‡</sup>	\$1,958
AXS Alternative Value Fund	\$7,235
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$111,029
AXS Income Opportunities Fund <sup>2,4</sup>	\$55,002
AXS Market Neutral Fund	\$21,153
AXS Merger Fund	\$123,320
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	\$47,320
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	\$67,397
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$438,573

	<b>Co-Administration Fees*</b>
<b>For the fiscal year ended September 30, 2021</b>	
AXS Alternative Value Fund	\$2,240
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$61,588
AXS Market Neutral Fund	\$820
AXS Merger Fund	\$65,837
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	\$47,828
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	\$68,221
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$237,103
<b>For the fiscal year ended June 30, 2021</b>	
AXS Alternative Value Fund	\$103,819
AXS Market Neutral Fund	\$150,223

\* Includes Fund Administration and Accounting Fees

† The AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund commenced operations as series of the Trust on November 20, 2020.

‡ The AXS Adaptive Plus Fund commenced operations on September 15, 2022.

1 The AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund and AXS Tactical Income Fund commenced operations on April 28, 2023.

2 The AXS Income Opportunities Fund commenced operations on May 13, 2022.

3 Effective September 1, 2023, the AXS Income Opportunities Fund's fiscal year changed to September 30.

4 For the fiscal year ended August 31, 2022.

UMBFS also acts as the Trust's fund accountant, transfer agent and dividend disbursing agent pursuant to separate agreements.

UMB Bank, n.a. (the "Custodian"), an affiliate of UMBFS, is the custodian of the assets of the Fund pursuant to a custody agreement between the Custodian and the Trust, whereby the Custodian provides services for fees on a transactional basis plus out-of-pocket expenses. The Custodian's address is 928 Grand Boulevard, Kansas City, Missouri 64106. The Custodian does not participate in decisions pertaining to the purchase and sale of securities by the Fund.

Tait, Weller & Baker LLP ("Tait Weller"), located at Two Liberty Place, 50 S. 16<sup>th</sup> Street, Suite 2900, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19102-2529, is the independent registered public accounting firm for the Funds. Its services include auditing the Funds' financial statements and the performance of related tax services.

Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP ("Morgan Lewis"), 600 Anton Boulevard, Suite 1800, Costa Mesa, California 92626, serves as legal counsel to the Trust and the Independent Trustees.

### **Distributor and the Distribution Agreement**

ALPS Distributors, Inc. is the distributor (also known as the principal underwriter) of the shares of the Funds and is located at 1290 Broadway, Suite 1000, Denver, Colorado 80203. The Distributor is a registered broker-dealer and is a member of FINRA. The Distributor is not an affiliate of the Trust, the Advisor or any other service provider for the Funds.

Under a Distribution Agreement with the Trust (the "Distribution Agreement"), the Distributor acts as the agent of the Trust in connection with the continuous offering of shares of the Funds. The Distributor continually distributes shares of the Funds on a commercially reasonable efforts basis. The Distributor has no obligation to sell any specific quantity of Fund shares. The Distributor and its officers have no role in determining the investment policies or which securities are to be purchased or sold by the Trust.



The Distributor may enter into agreements with selected broker-dealers, banks or other financial intermediaries for distribution of shares of the Funds. With respect to certain financial intermediaries and related fund “supermarket” platform arrangements, the Funds and/or the Advisor, rather than the Distributor, typically enter into such agreements. These financial intermediaries may charge a fee for their services and may receive shareholder service or other fees from parties other than the Distributor. These financial intermediaries may otherwise act as processing agents and are responsible for transmitting purchase, redemption and other requests to the Funds.

Investors who purchase shares through financial intermediaries will be subject to the procedures of those intermediaries through which they purchase shares, which may include charges, investment minimums, cutoff times and other restrictions in addition to, or different from, those listed herein. Information concerning any charges or services will be provided to customers by the financial intermediary through which they purchase shares. Investors purchasing shares of the Fund through financial intermediaries should acquaint themselves with their financial intermediary’s procedures and should read the Prospectus in conjunction with any materials and information provided by their financial intermediary. The financial intermediary, and not its customers, will be the shareholder of record, although customers may have the right to vote shares depending upon their arrangement with the financial intermediary. The Distributor does not receive compensation from the Fund for its distribution services except the distribution/service fees with respect to the shares of those classes for which a Rule 12b-1 distribution plan is effective. The Advisor pays the Distributor a fee for certain distribution-related services.

The Distribution Agreement will continue in effect with respect to a Fund only if such continuance is specifically approved at least annually by the Board or by vote of a majority of the Fund’s outstanding voting securities in accordance with the 1940 Act. The Distribution Agreement is terminable without penalty by the Trust on behalf of a Fund on no less than 60 days’ written notice when authorized either by a vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of the Fund or by vote of a majority of the members of the Board who are not “interested persons” (as defined in the 1940 Act) of the Trust and have no direct or indirect financial interest in the operation of the Distribution Agreement, or by the Distributor, and will automatically terminate in the event of its “assignment” (as defined in the 1940 Act). The Distribution Agreement provides that the Distributor shall not be liable for any error of judgment or mistake of law or for any loss suffered by the Trust in connection with the performance of the Distributor’s obligations and duties under the Distribution Agreement, except a loss resulting from the Distributor’s gross negligence, willful misconduct or fraud in the performance of such duties and obligations.

The following table shows the aggregate amount of brokerage commissions paid and amounts received by the Distributor for the periods indicated:

	<b>Amount of Commissions</b>	<b>Amount Received</b>
<b>For the fiscal ended September 30, 2022</b>		
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$3,022	\$402
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$260,392	\$38,554
<b>For the fiscal ended September 30, 2021</b>		
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$6,232	\$857
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$324,200	\$44,583
<b>For the fiscal ended September 30, 2020</b>		
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$868	\$118

The Distributor does not retain sales charges for the sale of a Fund’s Class A shares. Should any amounts be retained by the Distributor, such amounts would not be held for profit by the Distributor, but instead would be used solely for distribution-related expenditures.

### **Dealer Reallowances**

The Funds' Class A shares are subject to a sales charge that includes a dealer reallowance, which varies depending on how much the shareholder invests. The Distributor pays the appropriate dealer reallowance to dealers who have entered into an agreement with the Distributor to sell shares of the Funds. More detailed information on the sales charge and its application is contained in the Prospectus.

### **Rule 12b-1 Plan**

The Trust has adopted a plan pursuant to Rule 12b-1 under the 1940 Act (the "12b-1 Plan") that provides for Fund assets to be used for the payment for distribution services for Class A shares, Class D, Investor Class shares and Class C shares. The 12b-1 Plan provides alternative methods for paying sales charges and may help the Funds grow or maintain asset levels to provide operational efficiencies and economies of scale. The 12b-1 Plan also provides for the payment of service fees in connection with the provision of post-sales shareholder liaison services to holders of Class A shares, Class D, Investor Class shares and Class C shares as defined in FINRA regulations, including personal services such as responding to customer inquiries, and services related to the maintenance of shareholder accounts. Because 12b-1 fees are paid out of Fund assets attributable to Class A shares, Class D, Investor Class shares and Class C shares on an ongoing basis, they will, over time, increase the cost of an investment and may cost more than other types of sales charges.

The 12b-1 Plan provides that the distribution fees paid by Class A, Class D, Investor Class or Class C shares of the Fund may be used to pay for any expenses primarily intended to result in the sale of shares of such Class, including, but not limited to: (a) costs of payments, including incentive compensation, made to agents for and consultants to the Distributor or the Trust, including pension administration firms that provide distribution services and broker-dealers that engage in the distribution of the shares of such Class of the Fund; (b) payments made to, and expenses of, persons who provide support services in connection with the distribution of shares of such Class of the Fund; (c) payments made pursuant to any dealer agreements between the Distributor and certain broker-dealers, financial institutions and other service providers with respect to such Class of the Fund; (d) costs relating to the formulation and implementation of marketing and promotional activities; (e) costs of printing and distributing prospectuses, statements of additional information and reports of the Fund to prospective shareholders of such Class of the Fund; (f) costs involved in preparing, printing and distributing sales literature pertaining to such Class of the Fund; (g) costs involved in obtaining such information, analyses and reports with respect to marketing and promotional activities that the Trust may deem advisable with respect to such Class of the Fund; and (h) reimbursement to the Advisor for expenses advanced on behalf of the Fund or Class with respect to such activities. The 12b-1 Plan is a compensation plan, which means that the Distributor is compensated regardless of its expenses, as opposed to a reimbursement plan which reimburses only for expenses incurred. The Distributor does not retain any 12b-1 fees for profit. All 12b-1 fees are held in a retention account by the Distributor to pay for distribution-related expenditures.

The 12b-1 Plan may not be amended to materially increase the amount to be paid by the Funds; Class A, Class D, Investor Class or Class C shares for distribution services without the vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of such shares. The 12b-1 Plan shall continue in effect indefinitely with respect to a Class, provided that such continuance is approved at least annually by a vote of a majority of the Trustees, including the Independent Trustees, cast in person at a meeting called for such purpose or by vote of at least a majority of the outstanding voting securities of such Class. The 12b-1 Plan may be terminated with respect to a Class at any time without penalty by vote of a majority of the Independent Trustees or by vote of the majority of the outstanding voting securities of such Class.

If the 12b-1 Plan is terminated for the Funds' Class A shares, Class D shares, Investor Class shares or Class C shares in accordance with its terms, the obligation of the Fund to make payments pursuant to the 12b-1 Plan with respect to such Class will cease and the Fund will not be required to make any payments past the termination date. Thus, there will be no legal obligation for the Fund to make any payments other than for fees already payable under the 12b-1 Plan, if the 12b-1 Plan is terminated in accordance with its terms for any reason.

The following table shows the 12b-1 fees paid pursuant to the 12b-1 plan for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2023.

	Advertising/ Marketing	Printing/ Postage	Payment to distributor	Payment to dealers	Compensation to sales personnel	Interest, carrying, or other financing charges	Other	Total
AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
AXS Alternative Value Fund	\$0	\$0	\$7,076	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$7,076
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	\$0	\$0	\$72,431	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$72,431
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	\$0	\$0	\$3,684	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$3,684
AXS Income Opportunities Fund	\$0	\$0	\$5,262	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$5,262
AXS Market Neutral Fund	\$0	\$0	\$4,868	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$4,868
AXS Merger Fund	\$0	\$0	\$2,543	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$2,543
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	\$0	\$0	\$31,192	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$31,192
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
AXS Tactical Income Fund	\$0	\$0	\$3,657	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$3,657
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	\$0	\$0	\$130,839	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$130,839

### **Marketing and Support Payments**

The Advisor, out of its own resources and without additional cost to the Funds or its shareholders, may provide cash payments or other compensation to certain financial intermediaries who sell shares of the Fund. These payments are in addition to other fees described in the Funds' Prospectus and this SAI, and are generally provided for shareholder services or marketing support. Payments for marketing support are typically for inclusion of a Fund on sales lists, including electronic sales platforms. Investors may wish to take these payments into account when considering and evaluating recommendations to purchase shares of the Funds.

## **PORTFOLIO TRANSACTIONS AND BROKERAGE**

---

Pursuant to the Advisory Agreement and Sub-Advisory Agreements, the Advisor and Sub-Advisors determine which securities are to be purchased and sold by each Fund and which broker-dealers are eligible to execute each Fund's portfolio transactions. The purchases and sales of securities in the over-the-counter market will generally be executed by using a broker for the transaction.

Purchases of portfolio securities for a Fund also may be made directly from issuers or from underwriters. Where possible, purchase and sale transactions will be effected through dealers (including banks) that specialize in the types of securities which a Fund will be holding unless better executions are available elsewhere. Dealers and underwriters usually act as principals for their own accounts. Purchases from underwriters will include a concession paid by the issuer to the underwriter and purchases from dealers will include the spread between the bid and the asked price. If the execution and price offered by more than one dealer or underwriter are comparable, the order may be allocated to a dealer or underwriter that has provided research or other services as discussed below.

In placing portfolio transactions, the Advisor and Sub-Advisors will use reasonable efforts to choose broker-dealers capable of providing the services necessary to obtain the most favorable price and execution available. The full range and quality of services available will be considered in making these determinations, such as the size of the order, the difficulty of execution, the operational facilities of the broker-dealer involved, the risk in positioning the block of securities, and other factors. In those instances where it is reasonably determined that more than one broker-dealer can offer the services needed to obtain the most favorable price and execution available, consideration may be given to those broker-dealers which furnish or supply research and statistical information to the Advisor and Sub-Advisors that they may lawfully and appropriately use in their investment advisory capacities, as well as provide other services in addition to execution services. Each of the Advisor and Sub-Advisors considers such information, which is in addition to and not in lieu of the services required to be performed by it under its Advisory Agreement and Sub-Advisory Agreements with the Funds, to be useful in varying degrees, but of indeterminable value.

While it is each Fund's general policy to seek to obtain the most favorable price and execution available in selecting a broker-dealer to execute portfolio transactions for the Fund, weight is also given to the ability of a broker-dealer to furnish brokerage and research services as defined in Section 28(e) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, to the Fund or to the Advisor, even if the specific services are not directly useful to the Funds and may be useful to the Advisor in advising other clients. In negotiating commissions with a broker or evaluating the spread to be paid to a dealer, a Fund may therefore pay a higher commission or spread than would be the case if no weight were given to the furnishing of these supplemental services, provided that the amount of such commission or spread has been determined in good faith by the Advisor and Sub-Advisors to be reasonable in relation to the value of the brokerage and/or research services provided by such broker-dealer. The standard of reasonableness is to be measured in light of the Advisor's or Sub-Advisors' overall responsibilities to each Fund.

Investment decisions for each Fund are made independently from those of other client accounts that may be managed or advised by the Advisor or Sub-Advisors. Nevertheless, it is possible that at times, identical securities will be acceptable for both a Fund and one or more of such client accounts. In such event, the position of the Fund and such client accounts in the same issuer may vary and the holding period may likewise vary. However, to the extent any of these client accounts seek to acquire the same security as a Fund at the same time, the Fund may not be able to acquire as large a position in such security as it desires, or it may have to pay a higher price or obtain a lower yield for such security. Similarly, a Fund may not be able to obtain as high a price for, or as large an execution of, an order to sell any particular security at the same time as the Advisor's or Sub-Advisors' other client accounts.

The Funds do not effect securities transactions through brokers in accordance with any formula, nor do they effect securities transactions through brokers for selling shares of the Funds. However, broker-dealers who execute brokerage transactions may effect purchase of shares of the Funds for their customers. The brokers may also supply the Fund with research, statistical and other services.

The Funds paid the following brokerage and soft dollar commissions for the periods indicated:

	<b>Brokerage Commissions</b>	<b>Soft Dollar Commissions</b>
<b>AXS Adaptive Plus Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$20,432	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2022	\$5,023	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2021 <sup>1</sup>	N/A	N/A
<b>AXS Alternative Value Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$5,804	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2022	\$6,676	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2021	\$271	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2021	\$4,512	\$0
<b>AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$94,756	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2022	\$28,734	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2021	\$21,552	\$0
<b>AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023 <sup>2</sup>	\$94,422	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2022 <sup>4</sup>	\$283,281	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2021 <sup>4</sup>	\$423,432	\$0
<b>AXS Income Opportunities Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$117,135	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2023	\$123,255	\$69,507
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2022 <sup>3</sup>	\$217,275	\$10,168
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2021 <sup>4</sup>	\$352,204	n/a
<b>AXS Market Neutral Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$24,297	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2022	\$8,528	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2021	\$5,520	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2021	\$34,569	\$0
<b>AXS Merger Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$32,289	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2022	\$43,873	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2021	\$51,803	\$0
<b>AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$19,652	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2022	\$14,814	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2021	\$30,364	\$0
<b>AXS Sustainable Income Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$0	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2022	\$0	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2021	\$0	\$0
<b>AXS Tactical Income Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023 <sup>2</sup>	\$89,128	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2022 <sup>4</sup>	\$239,026	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2021 <sup>4</sup>	\$240,145	\$0
<b>AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund</b>		
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2023	\$172,029	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2022	\$656,128	\$0
For the Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2021	\$463,121	\$0

1 The AXS Adaptive Plus Fund commenced operations on September 15, 2022.

2 The AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund and the AXS Tactical Income Fund commenced operations on April 28, 2023.

3 The AXS Income Opportunities Fund commenced operations on May 12, 2022.

4 Reflects the brokerage and soft dollar commissions paid by the applicable Predecessor Fund.

Fluctuations in brokerage commissions from year to year were due to increases or decreases in Fund assets resulting in increased trading.

### **Holdings of Securities of the Funds' Regular Brokers and Dealers**

From time to time, a Fund may acquire and hold securities issued by its “regular brokers or dealers” or the parents of those brokers or dealers. “Regular brokers or dealers” (as such term is defined in the 1940 Act) of a Fund are the ten brokers or dealers that, during the most recent fiscal year, (i) received the greatest dollar amounts of brokerage commissions from the Fund’s portfolio transactions, (ii) engaged as principal in the largest dollar amounts of the portfolio transactions of the Fund, or (iii) sold the largest dollar amounts of the Fund’s shares. No Fund held any securities of its “regular brokers or dealers” during the fiscal year ended September 30, 2023.

### **PORTFOLIO TURNOVER**

Although the Funds generally will not invest for short-term trading purposes, portfolio securities may be sold without regard to the length of time they have been held when, in the opinion of the Advisor, as applicable, investment considerations warrant such action. Portfolio turnover rate is calculated by dividing (1) the lesser of purchases or sales of portfolio securities for the fiscal year by (2) the monthly average of the value of portfolio securities owned during the fiscal year. A 100% turnover rate would occur if all the securities in a Fund’s portfolio, with the exception of securities whose maturities at the time of acquisition were one year or less, were sold and either repurchased or replaced within one year. A high rate of portfolio turnover (100% or more) generally leads to higher transaction costs and may result in a greater number of taxable transactions. To the extent net short-term capital gains are realized, any distributions resulting from such gains will generally be taxed at ordinary income tax rates for federal income tax purposes.

Each Fund’s portfolio turnover rates were as follows for the periods indicated.

	Fiscal Year Ended	
	September 30, 2023	September 30, 2022
AXS Adaptive Plus Fund	0%	0% <sup>1</sup>
AXS Alternative Value Fund	33%	26%
AXS Chesapeake Strategy Fund	0%	0%
AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund	649% <sup>3</sup>	742% <sup>3</sup>
AXS Income Opportunities Fund	5%	93%
AXS Market Neutral Fund	127%	42%
AXS Merger Fund	303%	218%
AXS Multi-Strategy Alternatives Fund	410%	456%
AXS Sustainable Income Fund	38%	35% <sup>2</sup>
AXS Tactical Income Fund	612% <sup>3</sup>	894% <sup>3</sup>
AXS FTSE Venture Capital Return Tracker Fund	24%	72%

- 1 The Fund commenced operations on September 15, 2022.
- 2 The AXS Sustainable Income Fund’s higher portfolio turnover in 2021 is primarily due to the Fund’s first year of operations (commenced operations on October 30, 2020) with trading activity to implement the fund’s investment strategy.
- 3 The AXS Dynamic Opportunity Fund and the AXS Tactical Income Fund commenced operations on April 28, 2023 and the fiscal year end changed from December 31 to September 30, effective July 1, 2023.
- 4 The fiscal year end for the AXS Income Opportunities Fund changed to September 30, effective September 1, 2023. The portfolio turnover rate for the Fund’s prior fiscal year ended August 31, 2023 was 46%

## **PROXY VOTING POLICY**

---

The Board has adopted Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures (the “Trust Policies”) on behalf of the Trust, which delegates the responsibility for voting each Fund’s proxies to the Advisor, as applicable, subject to the Board’s continuing oversight. The Trust Policies require that the Advisor vote proxies received in a manner consistent with the best interests of the Fund. The Trust Policies also require the Advisor to present to the Board, at least annually, the Advisor’s Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures (“Advisor’s Policies”) and a record of each proxy voted by the Advisor on behalf of each Fund, including a report on the resolution of all proxies identified by the Advisor as involving a conflict of interest. See Appendix B for the Advisor’s Proxy Policies and Procedures and the Trust Policies. The Trust Policies and Advisor’s Policies are intended to serve as guidelines and to further the economic value of each security held by the Funds. The Trust’s CCO will review the policies annually. Each proxy will be considered individually, taking into account the relevant circumstances at the time of each vote. Aspect and Chesapeake do not currently engage in, nor does it anticipate engaging in, the purchase or sale of voting securities and therefore currently does not receive, nor vote, proxies nor does it anticipate receiving or voting proxies.

If a proxy proposal raises a material conflict between the Advisor’s interests and a Fund’s interests, the Advisor will resolve the conflict by following the policy guidelines or the recommendation of an independent third party.

Each Fund is required to annually file Form N-PX, which lists the Fund’s complete proxy voting record for the 12-month period ended June 30 of each year. Once filed, the Fund’s proxy voting record will be available without charge, upon request, by calling toll-free 1-833-AXS-ALTS (1-833-297-2587) and on the SEC’s web site at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

## **ANTI-MONEY LAUNDERING PROGRAM**

---

The Trust has established an Anti-Money Laundering Compliance Program (the “Program”) as required by the Uniting and Strengthening America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism Act of 2001 (“USA PATRIOT Act”). In order to ensure compliance with this law, the Program provides for the development and implementation of internal practices, procedures and controls, designation of anti-money laundering compliance officers, an ongoing training program and an independent audit function to determine the effectiveness of the Program.

Procedures to implement the Program include, but are not limited to, determining that the Funds’ Distributor and Transfer Agent have established proper anti-money laundering procedures, reporting suspicious and/or fraudulent activity, checking shareholder names against designated government lists, including Office of Foreign Assets Control (“OFAC”), and a complete and thorough review of all new opening account applications. The Trust will not transact business with any person or entity whose identity cannot be adequately verified under the provisions of the USA PATRIOT Act.

## **PORTFOLIO HOLDINGS INFORMATION**

---

The Funds have adopted policies and procedures regarding disclosure of portfolio holdings information (the “Disclosure Policy”). The Board of Trustees determined that the adoption of the Disclosure Policy, including the disclosure permitted therein, was in the best interests of the Funds. The Disclosure Policy applies to the Funds, Advisor, and other internal parties involved in the administration, operation or custody of the Funds, including, but not limited to UMBFS, MFAC, the Board of Trustees, counsel to the Trust and Independent Trustees, Morgan Lewis, and the Funds’ independent registered public accounting firm, Tait Weller & Baker LLP, and ICE Data Services, each of which assists each Fund with classifying its holdings pursuant to its liquidity risk management program (collectively, the “Service Providers”). Pursuant to the Disclosure Policy, non-public information concerning a Fund’s portfolio holdings may be disclosed to its Service Providers only if such disclosure is consistent with the antifraud provisions of the federal securities laws and the fiduciary duties owed by the Fund and the Advisor to the Fund’s shareholders. The Funds and their Service Providers may not receive compensation or any other consideration (which includes any agreement to maintain assets in a Fund or in other investment companies or accounts managed by the Advisor, or any or their affiliated persons) in connection with the disclosure of portfolio holdings information of the Funds. The Funds’ Policy is implemented and overseen by the CCO of the Trust, subject to the oversight of the Board of Trustees. Periodic reports regarding these procedures will be provided to the Trust’s Board.

Portfolio holdings information will be deemed public when it has been (1) posted to the Funds' public website (www.axsinvestments.com) or (2) disclosed in periodic regulatory filings on the SEC's website (www.sec.gov). Management of the Funds may make publicly available its portfolio holdings on the Fund's public website no earlier than five days after the date of such information (e.g., information as of January 31 may be made available no earlier than February 5).

**Non-Public Portfolio Holdings Information Policy.** All portfolio holdings information that has not been disseminated in a manner making it available to investors generally as described above is considered non-public portfolio holdings information for the purposes of the Disclosure Policy. Pursuant to the Disclosure Policy, the Funds or their Service Providers may disclose non-public portfolio holdings information to certain third parties who fall within pre-authorized categories on a daily basis, with no lag time unless otherwise specified below. These third parties include: (i) the Funds' Service Providers and others who need access to such information in the performance of their contractual or other duties and responsibilities to the Funds (e.g., custodians, accountants, the Advisor, administrators, attorneys, officers and Trustees) and who are subject to duties of confidentiality imposed by law or contract, (ii) brokers who execute trades for the Funds, (iii) evaluation service providers (as described below) and (iv) shareholders receiving in-kind redemptions (as described below).

**Evaluation Service Providers.** These third parties include mutual fund evaluation services, such as Morningstar, Inc. and Lipper, Inc. if the Funds have a legitimate business purpose for disclosing the information, provided that the third party expressly agrees to maintain the non-public portfolio holdings information in confidence and not to trade portfolio securities based on the non-public portfolio holdings information. Subject to the terms and conditions of any agreement between the Funds or their authorized service providers and the third party, if these conditions for disclosure are satisfied, there shall be no restriction on the frequency with which the Funds' non-public portfolio holdings information is released, and no lag period shall apply. In addition, persons who owe a duty of trust or confidence to the Funds or their Service Providers (such as legal counsel) may receive non-public portfolio holdings information without entering into a non-disclosure agreement.

**Shareholder In-Kind Distributions.** A Fund may, in certain circumstances, pay redemption proceeds to a shareholder by an in-kind distribution of portfolio securities (instead of cash). In such circumstances, pursuant to the Disclosure Policy, Fund shareholders may receive a complete listing of the portfolio holdings of the Fund up to seven (7) calendar days prior to making the redemption request provided that they represent orally or in writing that they agree to maintain the confidentiality of the portfolio holdings information and not to trade portfolio securities based on the non-public holdings information.

**Other Entities.** Pursuant to the Disclosure Policy, the Funds or the Advisor may disclose non-public portfolio holdings information to a third party who does not fall within the pre-approved categories, and who are not executing broker-dealers; however, prior to the receipt of any non-public portfolio holdings information by such third party, the recipient must have entered into a non-disclosure agreement and the disclosure arrangement must have been approved by the CCO of the Trust. The CCO will report to the Board of Trustees on a quarterly basis regarding any recipients of non-public portfolio holdings information approved pursuant to this paragraph. There are no other ongoing arrangements as of the date of this SAI.

The Advisor and its affiliates may provide investment advice to clients other than the Fund that have investment objectives that may be substantially similar to those of the Fund. These clients also may have portfolios consisting of holdings substantially similar to those of the Fund and generally have access to current portfolio holdings information for their accounts. These clients do not owe the Advisor or the Fund a duty of confidentiality with respect to disclosure of their portfolio holdings.

**Current Arrangements Regarding Disclosure of Portfolio Holdings.** As of the date of this SAI, the Trust or the Funds have on-going business arrangements with the following entities which involve making portfolio holdings information available to such entities as an incidental part of the services they provide to the Trust: (i) AXS Investments, LLC, the Advisor, MFAC and UMBFS (the Co-Administrators) and UMB Bank, N.A. (the Custodian), pursuant to investment management, administration and custody agreements, respectively, under which the Funds' portfolio holdings information is provided daily on a real-time basis (i.e., with no time lag); (ii) Tait, Weller & Baker LLP (independent registered public accounting firm), Morgan Lewis (attorneys), and AlphaDesk (order management and



portfolio management) to which the Funds provide portfolio holdings information on a regular basis with varying lag times after the date of the information, under which the Fund's portfolio holdings information is provided daily with no time lag; (iii) Practical Computer Application, to which MFAC provides the Trust's portfolio holdings information on a daily basis for programming and database hosting services in connection with MFAC's administrative services to the Trust; (iv) Donnelley Financial Solutions, to which the Trust provides portfolio holdings information on a monthly basis in connection with the filings of Form N-PORT; (v) Modern Capital; (vi) FilePoint to which MFAC provides the Fund's portfolio holdings on a monthly basis in connection with filings of Form N-PORT; (vii) ICE Data Services, which assists each Fund with classifying its holdings pursuant to its liquidity risk management program and the Fund's portfolio holdings information is provided monthly on a one- to ten-day time lag; and (viii) Morningstar, Inc., Lipper Inc., Refinitiv, Thomson Financial, Vickers Stock Research Corporation, and Bloomberg L.P., to which the Funds' portfolio holdings information is provided quarterly after the end of the previous fiscal quarter, with a 60-day time lag and no earlier than the date such information is filed on the SEC's EDGAR system on Form N-PORT (for the first and third fiscal quarters) or the Annual or Semi-Annual Report is mailed to shareholders (for the second and fourth fiscal quarters), as applicable; and (ix) Gainskeeper, Inc. and its affiliates, pursuant to an administrative agency agreement under which the Trust provides the Funds' portfolio tax lot holdings and transaction level data information on a daily basis.

## **DETERMINATION OF NET ASSET VALUE**

---

The NAVs of each Fund's shares will fluctuate and are determined as of 4:00 p.m. Eastern Time, the normal close of regular trading on the New York Stock Exchange (the "NYSE") on each day the NYSE is open for trading. The NAVs may be calculated earlier if permitted by the SEC. The NYSE annually announces the days on which it will not be open for trading. The most recent announcement indicates that the NYSE will not be open for the following holidays: New Year's Day, Martin Luther King, Jr. Day, Presidents' Day, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Juneteenth National Independence Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day and Christmas Day. However, the NYSE may close on days not included in that announcement.

The NAV of each class of each Fund is computed by dividing (a) the difference between the value of the Fund's securities, cash and other assets and the amount of the Fund's expenses and liabilities attributable to the class by (b) the number of shares outstanding in that class (assets – liabilities/# of shares = NAV). Each NAV takes into account all of the expenses and fees of that class of a Fund, including management fees and administration fees, which are accrued daily.

$$\frac{\text{Net Assets}}{\text{Shares Outstanding}} = \text{NAV}$$

Generally, a Fund's investments are valued at market value or, in the absence of a market value, at fair value as determined in good faith by the Advisor pursuant to procedures approved by or under the direction of the Board. Pursuant to those procedures, the Board has designated the Advisor as each Fund's valuation designee (the "Valuation Designee") responsible for determining whether market quotations are readily available and reliable, and making good faith determinations of fair value when appropriate. The Valuation Designee carries out its responsibilities with respect to fair value determinations through its Valuation Committee. As the Valuation Designee, the Advisor is responsible for the establishment and application, in a consistent manner, of appropriate methodologies for determining the fair value of investments, periodically reviewing the selected methodologies used for continuing appropriateness and accuracy, and making any changes or adjustments to the methodologies as appropriate. The Valuation Designee is also responsible for the identification, periodic assessment, and management of material risks, including material conflicts of interest, associated with fair value determinations, taking into account a Fund's investments, significant changes in the Fund's investment strategies or policies, market events, and other relevant factors. The Valuation Designee is subject to the general oversight of the Board.

A Fund's securities which are traded on securities exchanges are valued at the last sale price on the exchange on which such securities are traded, as of the close of business on the day the securities are being valued or, lacking any reported sales, at the mean between the last available bid and ask prices.

Pricing services generally value debt securities assuming orderly transactions of an institutional round lot size, but such securities may be held or transactions may be conducted in such securities in smaller, odd lot sizes. Odd lots often trade at lower prices than institutional round lots.

Securities that are traded on more than one exchange are valued on the exchange determined by the Advisor to be the primary market. Securities primarily traded in the National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotation (“NASDAQ”), National Market System for which market quotations are readily available shall be valued using the NASDAQ Official Closing Price (“NOCP”). If the NOCP is not available, such securities shall be valued at the last sale price on the day of valuation, or if there has not been any sale on such day, at the mean between the bid and ask prices. OTC securities which are not traded in the NASDAQ National Market System shall be valued at the most recent trade price.

Stocks that are “thinly traded” or events occurring when a foreign market is closed but the NYSE is open (for example, the value of a security held by a Fund has been materially affected by events occurring after the close of the exchange or market on which the security is principally traded) may create a situation in which a market quote would not be readily available. When a market quote is not readily available, the security’s value is based on “fair value” as determined by the Advisor’s procedures, which have been approved by the Board. The Advisor will periodically test the appropriateness and accuracy of the fair value methodologies that have been selected for each Fund. A Fund may hold portfolio securities such as those traded on foreign securities exchanges that trade on weekends or other days when the Funds’ shares are not priced. Therefore, the value of the Fund’s shares may change on days when shareholders will not be able to purchase or redeem shares.

Short-term debt obligations with remaining maturities in excess of 60 days are valued at current market prices, as discussed above. Short-term securities with 60 days or less remaining to maturity are, unless conditions indicate otherwise, are amortized to maturity based on their cost to a Fund if acquired within 60 days of maturity or, if already held by the Fund on the 60<sup>th</sup> day, based on the value determined on the 61<sup>st</sup> day.

All other assets of the Funds are valued in such manner as the Advisor, in good faith, deems appropriate to reflect as their fair value.

## **PURCHASE AND REDEMPTION OF FUND SHARES**

---

Detailed information on the purchase and redemption of shares is included in the Funds’ Prospectus. Shares of each Fund are sold at the next offering price calculated after receipt of an order for purchase. In order to purchase shares of a Fund, you must invest the initial minimum investment for the relevant class of shares. However, each Fund reserves the right, in its sole discretion, to waive the minimum initial investment amount for certain investors, or to waive or reduce the minimum initial investment for 401(k) plans or other tax-deferred retirement plans. You may purchase shares on any day that the NYSE is open for business by placing orders with the Fund.

Each Fund reserves the right to refuse any purchase requests, particularly those that would not be in the best interests of the Fund or its shareholders and could adversely affect the Fund or its operations. This includes those from any individual or group who, in the Fund’s view, is likely to engage in or has a history of excessive trading (usually defined as more than four round-trip transactions out of the Fund within a calendar year). Furthermore, the Trust may suspend the right to redeem its shares or postpone the date of payment upon redemption for more than seven calendar days (i) for any period during which the NYSE is closed (other than customary weekend or holiday closings) or trading on the NYSE is restricted; (ii) for any period during which an emergency exists affecting the sale by a Fund of securities or making such sale or the fair determination of the value of the Fund’s net assets not reasonably practicable; or (iii) for such other periods as the SEC may permit for the protection of the Fund’s shareholders. In addition, if shares are purchased using a check and a redemption is requested before the check has cleared, the Fund may postpone payment of your redemption proceeds up to 15 days while the Fund waits for the check to clear.

### **Redemptions In-Kind**

The Trust has filed an election under SEC Rule 18f-1 committing to pay in cash all redemptions by a shareholder of record up to amounts specified by the rule (the lesser of (i) \$250,000 or (ii) 1% of each Fund’s assets). Each Fund has reserved the right to pay the redemption price of its shares in excess of the amounts specified by the rule, either totally or partially, by a distribution in-kind of portfolio securities (instead of cash). The securities so distributed would be valued at the same amounts as those assigned to them in calculating the NAV for the Fund shares being redeemed. If a shareholder receives a distribution in-kind, the shareholder could incur brokerage or other charges in converting the securities to cash.

No Fund intends to hold any significant percentage of its portfolio in illiquid securities, although each Fund, like virtually all mutual funds, may from time to time hold a small percentage of securities that are illiquid. In the unlikely event a Fund were to elect to make an in-kind redemption, each Fund expects that it would follow the normal protocol of making such distribution by way of a pro rata distribution based on its entire portfolio. If the Fund held illiquid securities, such distribution may contain a pro rata portion of such illiquid securities or the Fund may determine, based on a materiality assessment, not to include illiquid securities in the in-kind redemption. No Fund anticipates that it would ever selectively distribute a greater than pro rata portion of any illiquid securities to satisfy a redemption request. If such securities are included in the distribution, shareholders may not be able to liquidate such securities and may be required to hold such securities indefinitely. Shareholders' ability to liquidate such securities distributed in-kind may be restricted by resale limitations or substantial restrictions on transfer imposed by the issuers of the securities or by law. Shareholders may only be able to liquidate such securities distributed in-kind at a substantial discount from their value, and there may be higher brokerage costs associated with any subsequent disposition of these securities by the recipient.

## **FEDERAL INCOME TAX MATTERS**

---

The following is a summary of certain material U.S. federal (and, where noted, state and local) income tax considerations affecting each Fund and its shareholders. The discussion is very general. Current and prospective shareholders are therefore urged to consult their own tax advisors with respect to the specific federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences of investing in a Fund. The summary is based on the laws in effect on the date of this SAI and existing judicial and administrative interpretations thereof, all of which are subject to change, possibly with retroactive effect.

Each Fund is treated as a separate entity from other series of the Trust for federal income tax purposes. Each Fund has elected to be, and intends to qualify each year for treatment as, a "regulated investment company" under Subchapter M of the Code by complying with all applicable requirements of the Code, including, among other things, requirements as to the sources of the Fund's income, diversification of the Fund's assets and timing of Fund distributions. To so qualify, a Fund must, among other things: (a) derive at least 90% of its gross income in each taxable year from dividends, interest, payments with respect to certain securities loans, and gains from the sale or other disposition of stock or securities or foreign currencies, or other income (including, but not limited to, gains from options, futures or forward contracts) derived with respect to its business of investing in such stock, securities or currencies, and net income derived from interests in "qualified publicly traded partnerships" (i.e., partnerships that are traded on an established securities market or tradable on a secondary market, other than partnerships that derive 90% of their income from interest, dividends, capital gains, and other traditionally permitted mutual fund income) (collectively, "qualifying income"); (b) diversify its holdings so that, at the end of each quarter of the Fund's taxable year, (i) at least 50% of the market value of the Fund's assets is represented by cash, securities of other regulated investment companies, U.S. government securities and other securities, with such other securities limited, in respect of any one issuer, to an amount not greater than 5% of the Fund's assets and not greater than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of such issuer and (ii) not more than 25% of the value of its assets is invested, including through corporations in which the Fund owns a 20% or more voting stock interest, in the securities (other than U.S. government securities or securities of other regulated investment companies) of any one issuer, in the securities (other than the securities of other regulated investment companies) of any two or more issuers that the Fund controls and that are determined to be engaged in the same or similar trades or businesses or related trades or businesses, or in the securities of one or more "qualified publicly traded partnerships"; and (c) distribute an amount equal to the sum of at least 90% of its investment company taxable income (computed without regard to the dividends-paid deduction) and 90% of its net tax-exempt income, if any, for the tax year (including, for purposes of satisfying this distribution requirement, certain distributions made by the Fund after the close of its taxable year that are treated as made during such taxable year).

As a regulated investment company, a Fund will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the portion of its taxable investment income and capital gains that it distributes to its shareholders provided that it satisfies a minimum distribution requirement. In order to also avoid liability for a non-deductible federal excise tax, a Fund must distribute (or be deemed to have distributed) by December 31 of each calendar year at least the sum of (i) 98% of its ordinary income for such year, (ii) 98.2% of the excess of its realized capital gains over its realized capital losses for the 12-month period generally ending on October 31 during such year and (iii) any amounts from the prior calendar year that were not distributed and on which the Fund paid no federal income tax. A Fund will be subject to income tax at the applicable corporate tax rate on any taxable income or gains that it does not distribute to its shareholders. Each Fund's policy is to distribute to its shareholders all investment company taxable income (determined without regard to the deduction for dividends paid)

and any net capital gain (the excess of net long-term capital gain over net short-term capital loss) for each fiscal year in a manner that complies with the distribution requirements of the Code, so that the Fund will not be subject to any federal income or excise taxes.

If, for any taxable year, a Fund were to fail to qualify as a regulated investment company or were to fail to meet certain minimum distribution requirements under the Code, it would be taxed in the same manner as an ordinary corporation and distributions to its shareholders would not be deductible by the Fund in computing its taxable income. In addition, in the event of a failure to qualify, a Fund's distributions, to the extent derived from the Fund's current or accumulated earnings and profits, including any distributions of net capital gain, would be taxable to shareholders as ordinary dividend income for federal income tax purposes. However, such dividends would be eligible, subject to any generally applicable limitations, (i) to be treated as qualified dividend income in the case of shareholders taxed as individuals and (ii) for the dividends received deduction in the case of corporate shareholders. Moreover, if a Fund were to fail to qualify as a regulated investment company in any year, it would be required to pay out its earnings and profits accumulated in that year in order to qualify again as a regulated investment company. Under certain circumstances, a Fund may be able to cure a failure to qualify as a regulated investment company, but in order to do so the Fund might incur significant Fund-level taxes and might be forced to dispose of certain assets. If a Fund failed to qualify as a regulated investment company for a period greater than two taxable years, the Fund would generally be required to recognize any net built-in gains with respect to certain of its assets upon a disposition of such assets within five years of qualifying as a regulated investment company in a subsequent year.

Shareholders generally will be subject to federal income taxes on distributions made by a Fund whether paid in cash or additional shares. Distributions of net investment income (including interest, dividend income and net short-term capital gain in excess of any net long-term capital loss, less certain expenses), other than qualified dividend income, will be taxable to shareholders as ordinary income. Distributions of qualified dividend income, generally will be taxed to non-corporate shareholders at the federal income tax rates applicable to net capital gain, provided the Fund reports the amount distributed as qualified dividend income.

In general, dividends may be reported by a Fund as qualified dividend income if they are attributable to qualified dividend income received by the Fund. Qualified dividend income generally means dividend income received from a Fund's investments in common and preferred stock of U.S. companies and stock of certain qualified foreign corporations, provided that certain holding period and other requirements are met by both the Fund and its shareholders. If 95% or more of a Fund's gross income (calculated without taking into account net capital gain derived from sales or other dispositions of stock or securities) consists of qualified dividend income, the Fund may report all distributions of such income as qualified dividend income.

A foreign corporation is treated as a qualified foreign corporation for this purpose if it is incorporated in a possession of the United States or it is eligible for the benefits of certain income tax treaties with the United States and meets certain additional requirements. Certain foreign corporations that are not otherwise qualified foreign corporations will be treated as qualified foreign corporations with respect to dividends paid by them if the stock with respect to which the dividends are paid is readily tradable on an established securities market in the United States. Passive foreign investment companies are not qualified foreign corporations for this purpose. Dividends received by a Fund from REITs generally do not qualify for treatment as qualified dividend income.

Dividends paid by a Fund may qualify in part for the dividends-received deduction available to corporate shareholders, provided the Fund reports the amount distributed as a qualifying dividend and certain holding period and other requirements under the Code are satisfied. The reported amount, however, cannot exceed the aggregate amount of qualifying dividends received by the Fund for its taxable year. Eligibility for qualified dividend income treatment and the dividends-received deduction may be reduced or eliminated if, among other things, (i) the shareholder is under an obligation (whether pursuant to a short sale or otherwise) to make related payments with respect to positions in substantially similar or related property or (ii) certain holding period requirements are not satisfied at both the Fund and shareholder levels. In addition, qualified dividend income treatment is not available if a shareholder elects to have the dividend income treated as investment income for purposes of the limitation on deductibility of investment interest.

If a Fund receives a dividend (other than a capital gain dividend) in respect of any share of REIT stock with a tax holding period of at least 46 days during the 91-day period beginning on the date that is 45 days before the date on which the stock becomes ex-dividend as to that dividend, then Fund dividends attributable to that REIT dividend income

(as reduced by certain Fund expenses) may be reported by the Fund as eligible for the 20% deduction for “qualified REIT dividends” generally available to noncorporate shareholders under the Code. In order to qualify for this deduction, noncorporate shareholders must meet minimum holding period requirements with respect to their Fund shares.

Under Section 163(j) of the Code, a taxpayer’s business interest expense is generally deductible to the extent of the taxpayer’s business interest income plus certain other amounts. If a Fund earns business interest income, it may report a portion of its dividends as “Section 163(j) interest dividends,” which its shareholders may be able to treat as business interest income for purposes of Section 163(j) of the Code. A Fund’s “Section 163(j) interest dividend” for a tax year will be limited to the excess of its business interest income over the sum of its business interest expense and other deductions properly allocable to its business interest income. In general, a Fund’s shareholders may treat a distribution reported as a Section 163(j) interest dividend as interest income only to the extent the distribution exceeds the sum of the portions of the distribution reported as other types of tax-favored income. To be eligible to treat a Section 163(j) interest dividend as interest income, a shareholder may need to meet certain holding period requirements in respect of the Fund shares and must not have hedged its position in the Fund shares in certain ways.

Distributions of net capital gain, if any, that a Fund reports as capital gain dividends will be taxable to non-corporate shareholders as long-term capital gain without regard to how long a shareholder has held shares of the Fund. A Fund may retain certain amounts of capital gains and designate them as undistributed net capital gain in a notice to its shareholders, who (i) will be required to include in income for U.S. federal income tax purposes, as long-term capital gain, their proportionate shares of the undistributed amounts so designated, (ii) will be entitled to credit their proportionate shares of the income tax paid by the Fund on those undistributed amounts against their federal income tax liabilities and to claim refunds to the extent such credits exceed their liabilities and (iii) will be entitled to increase their federal income tax basis in their shares by an amount equal to the excess of the amounts of undistributed net capital gain included in their respective income over their respective income tax credits.

For U.S. federal income tax purposes, the Fund is permitted to carry forward indefinitely a net capital loss from any taxable year to offset its capital gains, if any, in years following the year of the loss. To the extent subsequent capital gains are offset by such losses, they will not result in U.S. federal income tax liability to the Fund and may not be distributed as capital gains to shareholders. Generally, the Fund may not carry forward any losses other than net capital losses. Under certain circumstances, the Fund may elect to treat certain losses as though they were incurred on the first day of the taxable year immediately following the taxable year in which they were actually incurred.

Distributions in excess of earnings and profits will, as to each shareholder, be treated as a tax-free return of capital to the extent of the shareholder’s basis in his or her Fund shares. A distribution treated as a return of capital will reduce the shareholder’s basis in his or her shares, which will result in an increase in the amount of gain (or a decrease in the amount of loss) that will be recognized by the shareholder for tax purposes on a later sale of such shares. After the shareholder’s basis is reduced to zero, any distributions in excess of earnings and profits will be treated as a capital gain, assuming the shareholder holds his or her shares as capital assets.

A 3.8% Medicare contribution tax generally applies to all or a portion of the net investment income of a shareholder who is an individual and not a nonresident alien for federal income tax purposes and who has adjusted gross income (subject to certain adjustments) that exceeds a threshold amount (\$250,000 if married filing jointly or if considered a “surviving spouse” for federal income tax purposes, \$125,000 if married filing separately, and \$200,000 in other cases). This 3.8% tax also applies to all or a portion of the undistributed net investment income of certain shareholders that are estates and trusts. For these purposes, interest, dividends and certain capital gains (among other categories of income) are generally taken into account in computing a shareholder’s net investment income.

Certain tax-exempt educational institutions are subject to a 1.4% tax on net investment income. For these purposes, certain dividends and capital gain distributions, and certain gains from the disposition of Fund shares (among other categories of income), are generally taken into account in computing a shareholder’s net investment income.

Distributions are generally taxable when received. However, distributions declared in October, November or December to shareholders of record on a date in such a month and paid the following January are taxable for federal income tax purposes as if received on December 31 of the calendar year in which declared. In addition, certain distributions made after the close of a taxable year of a Fund may be “spilled back” and treated for certain purposes as paid by the

Fund during such taxable year. In such case, shareholders generally will be treated as having received such dividends in the taxable year in which the distributions were actually made. For purposes of calculating the amount of a regulated investment company's undistributed income and gain subject to the 4% excise tax described above, such "spilled back" dividends are treated as paid by the regulated investment company when they are actually paid.

A redemption of Fund shares may result in recognition of a taxable gain or loss. The gain or loss will generally be treated as a long-term capital gain or loss if the shares are held for more than one year, and as a short-term capital gain or loss if the shares are held for one year or less. Any loss realized upon a redemption or exchange of shares held for six months or less will be treated as a long-term capital loss to the extent of any amounts treated as distributions of long-term capital gains during such six-month period. Any loss realized upon a redemption may be disallowed under certain wash sale rules to the extent shares of the same Fund or substantially identical stock or securities are purchased (through reinvestment of distributions or otherwise) within 30 days before or after the redemption.

If a shareholder recognizes a loss with respect to a Fund's shares of \$2 million or more for an individual shareholder or \$10 million or more for a corporate shareholder (or certain greater amounts over a combination of years), the shareholder must file with the IRS a disclosure statement on IRS Form 8886. Direct shareholders of portfolio securities are in many cases exempted from this reporting requirement, but under current guidance, shareholders of a regulated investment company are not exempted. The fact that a loss is so reportable does not affect the legal determination of whether the taxpayer's treatment of the loss is proper.

A Fund's transactions in options and other similar transactions, such as futures, may be subject to special provisions of the Code that, among other things, affect the character of any income realized by the Fund from such investments, accelerate recognition of income to the Fund, defer Fund losses, affect the holding period of the Fund's securities, affect whether distributions will be eligible for the dividends-received deduction or be treated as qualified dividend income and affect the determination of whether capital gain and loss is characterized as long-term or short-term capital gain or loss. These rules could therefore affect the character, amount and timing of distributions to shareholders. These provisions may also require a Fund to "mark-to-market" certain types of the positions in its portfolio (i.e., treat them as if they were closed out), which may cause the Fund to recognize income without receiving cash with which to make distributions in amounts necessary to satisfy the distribution requirements for avoiding U.S. federal income and excise taxes. The Funds will monitor these transactions and will make the appropriate entries in its books and records, and if a Fund deems it advisable, will make appropriate elections if available in order to mitigate the effect of these rules, prevent disqualification of the Fund as a regulated investment company and minimize the imposition of U.S. federal income and excise taxes.

The Funds' transactions in broad based equity index futures contracts, exchange-traded options on such indices and certain other futures contracts are generally considered "Section 1256 contracts" for federal income tax purposes. Any unrealized gains or losses on such Section 1256 contracts are treated as though they were realized at the end of each taxable year. The resulting gain or loss is treated as 60% long-term capital gain or loss and 40% short-term capital gain or loss. Gain or loss recognized on actual sales of Section 1256 contracts is treated in the same manner. As noted above, distributions of net short-term capital gain are generally taxable to shareholders as ordinary income while distributions of net long-term capital gain are taxable to shareholders as long-term capital gain, regardless of how long the shareholder has held shares of the Fund.

A Fund's entry into a short sale transaction, an option or certain other contracts, such as futures, could be treated as the constructive sale of an appreciated financial position, causing the Fund to realize gain, but not loss, on the position.

If a Fund invests in certain pay-in-kind securities, zero coupon securities, deferred interest securities or, in general, any other securities with original issue discount (or with market discount if the Fund elects to include market discount in income currently), the Fund must accrue income on such investments for each taxable year, which generally will be prior to the receipt of the corresponding cash payments. However, the Fund must distribute, at least annually, all or substantially all of its investment company taxable income (determined without regard to the deduction for dividends paid), including such accrued income to shareholders to avoid federal income and excise taxes. Therefore, the Fund may have to sell portfolio securities (potentially under disadvantageous circumstances) to generate cash, or may have to undertake leverage by borrowing cash, to satisfy these distribution requirements. Dispositions of portfolio securities may result in additional gains and additional distribution requirements.

If a Fund invests in a market discount bond, it will be required to treat any gain recognized on the disposition of such market discount bond as ordinary income (instead of capital gain) to the extent of the accrued market discount, unless the Fund elects to include the market discount in income as it accrues as discussed above. A market discount bond is a security acquired in the secondary market at a price below its redemption value (or its adjusted issue price if it is also an original issue discount bond).

The Funds may be subject to withholding and other taxes imposed by foreign countries, including taxes on interest, dividends and capital gains with respect to its investments in those countries, which would, if imposed, reduce the yield on or return from those investments. Tax treaties between certain countries and the United States may reduce or eliminate such taxes in some cases. So long as the Fund qualifies for treatment as a regulated investment company and incurs “qualified foreign taxes,” if more than 50% of its net assets at the close of its taxable year consist of stock or securities of foreign corporations, which for this purpose may include obligations of foreign governmental issuers, the Fund may elect to “pass through” to its shareholders the amount of such foreign taxes paid. If this election is made, information with respect to the amount of the foreign income taxes that are allocated to the Fund’s shareholders will be provided to them and any shareholder subject to tax on dividends will be required (i) to include in ordinary gross income (in addition to the amount of the taxable dividends actually received) his/her proportionate share of the foreign taxes paid that are attributable to such dividends; and (ii) either to deduct his/her proportionate share of such foreign taxes in computing his/her taxable income or to claim that amount as a foreign tax credit (subject to applicable limitations) against U.S. income taxes.

Shareholders who do not itemize deductions for U.S. federal income tax purposes will not be able to deduct their pro rata portion of qualified foreign taxes paid by the Fund, although such shareholders will be required to include their shares of such taxes in gross income if the Fund makes the election described above. Qualified foreign taxes generally include taxes that would be treated as income taxes under U.S. tax regulations but do not include most other taxes, such as stamp taxes, securities transaction taxes, and similar taxes. No deduction for such taxes will be permitted to individuals in computing their alternative minimum tax liability.

If a Fund makes the election to pass through qualified foreign taxes and a shareholder chooses to take a credit for the foreign taxes deemed paid by such shareholder, the amount of the credit that may be claimed in any year may not exceed the same proportion of the U.S. tax against which such credit is taken that the shareholder’s taxable income from foreign sources (but not in excess of the shareholder’s entire taxable income) bears to his entire taxable income. For this purpose, long-term and short-term capital gains the Fund realizes and distributes to shareholders will generally not be treated as income from foreign sources in their hands, nor will distributions of certain foreign currency gains subject to Section 988 of the Code or of any other income realized by the Fund that is deemed, under the Code, to be U.S.-source income in the hands of the Fund. This foreign tax credit limitation may also be applied separately to certain specific categories of foreign-source income and the related foreign taxes. As a result of these rules, which may have different effects depending upon each shareholder’s particular tax situation, certain shareholders may not be able to claim a credit for the full amount of their proportionate share of the foreign taxes paid by the Fund. Shareholders who are not liable for U.S. federal income taxes, including tax-exempt shareholders, will ordinarily not benefit from this election. If the Fund does make the election, it will provide required tax information to shareholders. The Fund generally may deduct any foreign taxes that are not passed through to its shareholders in computing its income available for distribution to shareholders to satisfy applicable tax distribution requirements. Under certain circumstances, if the Fund receives a refund of foreign taxes paid in respect of a prior year, the value of the Fund’s shares could be affected, or any foreign tax credits or deductions passed through to shareholders in respect of the Fund’s foreign taxes for the current year could be reduced.

Foreign exchange gains or losses realized by a Fund in connection with certain transactions involving foreign currency-denominated debt securities, certain options and futures contracts relating to foreign currency, foreign currency forward contracts, foreign currencies, or payables or receivables denominated in a foreign currency are subject to Section 988 of the Code, which generally causes such gains or losses to be treated as ordinary gain or loss and may affect the amount, timing and character of distributions to shareholders.

A Fund may purchase the securities of certain foreign entities treated as passive foreign investment companies for federal income tax purposes (“PFIC”). PFICs may be the only or primary means by which the Fund may invest in some countries. If a Fund invests in equity securities of PFICs, it may be subject to U.S. federal income tax on a portion of any “excess distribution” or gain from the disposition of such securities even if such income is distributed as a taxable dividend

to shareholders. Additional charges in the nature of interest may be imposed on the Fund with respect to deferred taxes arising from such distributions or gains. Capital gains on the sale of such holdings will be deemed to be ordinary income regardless of how long such PFICs are held. A “qualified electing fund” election or a “mark to market” election may generally be available that would ameliorate these adverse tax consequences, but such elections could require a Fund to recognize taxable income or gain (subject to the distribution requirements applicable to regulated investment companies, as described above) without the concurrent receipt of cash. In order to satisfy the distribution requirements and avoid a tax on a Fund, the Fund may be required to liquidate portfolio securities that it might otherwise have continued to hold, potentially resulting in additional taxable gain or loss to the Fund. In order for a Fund to make a qualified electing fund election with respect to a PFIC, the PFIC would have to agree to provide certain tax information to the Fund on an annual basis, which it might not agree to do. A Fund may limit and/or manage its holdings in PFICs to limit its tax liability or maximize its return from these investments. The Fund may limit and/or manage its holdings in PFICs to limit its tax liability or maximize its return from these investments.

If a sufficient percentage of the equity interests in a foreign issuer that is treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes are held by the Fund, independently or together with certain other U.S. persons, that issuer may be treated as a “controlled foreign corporation” (a “CFC”) with respect to the Fund, in which case the Fund will be required to take into account each year, as ordinary income, its share of certain portions of that issuer’s income, whether or not such amounts are distributed. The Fund may have to dispose of its portfolio securities (potentially resulting in the recognition of taxable gain or loss, and potentially under disadvantageous circumstances) to generate cash, or may have to borrow the cash, to meet its distribution requirements and avoid Fund-level taxes. In addition, some Fund gains on the disposition of interests in such an issuer may be treated as ordinary income. The Fund may limit and/or manage its holdings in issuers that could be treated as CFCs in order to limit its tax liability or maximize its after-tax return from these investments.

In addition, if the Fund owned 10% or more of the voting power of a foreign entity treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes for the last tax year of the foreign entity beginning before January 1, 2018, the Fund may have been required to include in its income its share of certain deferred foreign income of that foreign entity. Under those circumstances, the Fund may have been able to make an election to pay tax liability in respect of its share of any such income over eight years. It is possible that these deferred payments could affect the value of shares, even though all or some of the Fund’s shareholders at the time of any deferred payment may have derived no economic benefit from the foreign entity’s deferred income.

Depreciation or other cost recovery deductions passed through to the Fund from investments in MLPs in a given year will generally reduce the Fund’s taxable income, but those deductions may be recaptured in the Fund’s income in one or more subsequent years. When recognized and distributed, recapture income will generally be taxable to shareholders of the Fund at the time of the distribution at ordinary income tax rates, even though those shareholders might not have held shares in the Fund at the time the deductions were taken by the Fund, and even though those shareholders will not have corresponding economic gain on their shares at the time of the recapture. In order to distribute recapture income or to fund redemption requests, the Fund may need to liquidate investments, which may lead to additional recapture income.

Noncorporate taxpayers are generally eligible for a deduction of up to 20% of “qualified publicly traded partnership income.” The Fund will not be able to claim such a deduction in respect of income allocated to it by any MLPs or other publicly traded partnerships in which it invests, and absent any additional guidance, the law does not allow noncorporate shareholders to be able to claim a deduction in respect of Fund dividends attributable to any such income.

Non-U.S. persons are subject to U.S. tax on disposition of a “United States real property interest” (a “USRPI”). Gain on such a disposition is sometimes referred to as “FIRPTA gain.” The Code provides a look-through rule for distributions of “FIRPTA gain” if certain requirements are met. If the look-through rule applies, certain distributions attributable to income received by a Fund, e.g., from REITs, may be treated as gain from the disposition of a USRPI, causing distributions to be subject to U.S. withholding tax at rates of up to 21%, and require non-U.S. shareholders to file nonresident U.S. income tax returns.

The Funds are required to withhold (as “backup withholding”) a portion of reportable payments, including dividends, capital gain distributions and the proceeds of redemptions and exchanges or repurchases of Fund shares, paid to shareholders who have not complied with certain IRS regulations. The backup withholding rate is currently 24%.



In order to avoid this withholding requirement, shareholders, other than certain exempt entities, must certify on IRS Forms W-9 or on certain other documents, that the Social Security Numbers or other Taxpayer Identification Numbers they provide are their correct numbers and that they are not currently subject to backup withholding, or that they are exempt from backup withholding. The Fund may nevertheless be required to backup withhold if it receives notice from the IRS or a broker that a number provided is incorrect or that backup withholding is applicable as a result of previous underreporting of interest or dividend income.

Ordinary dividends and certain other payments made by a Fund to non-U.S. shareholders are generally subject to withholding tax at a 30% rate (or a lower rate as may be determined in accordance with any applicable treaty). In order to obtain a reduced rate of withholding, a non-U.S. shareholder will be required to provide an IRS Form W-8BEN or similar form certifying its entitlement to benefits under a treaty. The withholding tax does not apply to regular dividends paid to a non-U.S. shareholder who provides an IRS Form W-8ECI, certifying that the dividends are effectively connected with the non-U.S. shareholder's conduct of a trade or business within the United States. Instead, the effectively connected dividends will be subject to regular U.S. income tax as if the non-U.S. shareholder were a U.S. shareholder. A non-U.S. corporation receiving effectively connected dividends may also be subject to additional "branch profits tax" imposed at a rate of 30% (or a lower treaty rate).

The 30% withholding tax described in the preceding paragraph generally will not apply to distributions of net capital gain, to redemption proceeds, or to dividends that a Fund reports as (a) interest-related dividends, to the extent such dividends are derived from the Fund's "qualified net interest income," or (b) short-term capital gain dividends, to the extent such dividends are derived from the Fund's "qualified short-term gain." "Qualified net interest income" is the Fund's net income derived from U.S.-source interest and original issue discount, subject to certain exceptions and limitations. "Qualified short-term gain" generally means the excess of the net short-term capital gain of the Fund for the taxable year over its net long-term capital loss, if any. In order to qualify for an exemption from withholding, a non-U.S. shareholder will need to comply with applicable certification requirements relating to its non-U.S. status (including, in general, furnishing an IRS Form W-8BEN or other applicable form). Backup withholding will not be applied to payments that are subject to this 30% withholding tax.

Unless certain non-U.S. entities that hold Fund shares comply with IRS requirements that will generally require them to report information regarding U.S. persons investing in, or holding accounts with, such entities, a 30% withholding tax may apply to the Fund's dividends payable to such entities. A non-U.S. shareholder may be exempt from the withholding described in this paragraph under an applicable intergovernmental agreement between the United States and a foreign government, provided that the shareholder and the applicable foreign government comply with the terms of such agreement.

This discussion and the related discussion in the Prospectus have been prepared by management of the Funds, and counsel to the Trust has expressed no opinion in respect thereof.

Shareholders and prospective shareholders of the Fund should consult their own tax advisors concerning the effect of owning shares of a Fund in light of their particular tax situations.

## **DIVIDENDS AND DISTRIBUTIONS**

Each Fund will receive income in the form of dividends and interest earned on its investments in securities. This income, less the expenses incurred in its operations, is the Fund's net investment income, substantially all of which will be declared as dividends to the Fund's shareholders.

The amount of income dividend payments by a Fund is dependent upon the amount of net investment income received by the Fund from its portfolio holdings, is not guaranteed and is subject to the discretion of the Board. The Funds do not pay "interest" or guarantee any fixed rate of return on an investment in its shares.

The Funds also may derive capital gains or losses in connection with sales or other dispositions of its portfolio securities. Any net gain a Fund may realize from transactions involving investments held for less than the period required for long-term capital gain or loss recognition or otherwise producing short-term capital gains and losses (taking into account any available carryover of capital losses), although a distribution from capital gains, will be distributed to shareholders with and as a part of the income dividends paid by the Fund and will generally be taxable to shareholders as

ordinary income for federal income tax purposes. If during any year a Fund realizes a net gain on transactions involving investments held for more than the period required for long-term capital gain or loss recognition or otherwise producing long-term capital gains and losses, the Fund will have a net long-term capital gain. After deduction of the amount of any net short-term capital loss, the balance (to the extent not offset by any capital losses available to be carried over) generally will be distributed and treated as long-term capital gains in the hands of the shareholders regardless of the length of time the Fund's shares may have been held by the shareholders. For more information concerning applicable capital gains tax rates, see your tax advisor.

Any dividend or distribution paid by a Fund reduces the Fund's NAV on the date paid by the amount of the dividend or distribution per share. Accordingly, a dividend or distribution paid shortly after a purchase of shares by a shareholder will generally be taxable, even if it effectively represents a partial return of the shareholder's capital.

Dividends and other distributions will be made in the form of additional shares of a Fund unless the shareholder has otherwise indicated. Investors have the right to change their elections with respect to the reinvestment of dividends and distributions by notifying the Transfer Agent in writing, but any such change will be effective only as to dividends and other distributions for which the record date is seven or more business days after the Transfer Agent has received the written request.

A Fund's investments in partnerships, if any, including in qualified publicly traded partnerships, may result in that Fund being subject to state, local or foreign income, franchise or withholding tax liabilities.

## **GENERAL INFORMATION**

---

Investment Managers Series Trust II is an open-end management investment company organized as a Delaware statutory trust under the laws of the State of Delaware on August 20, 2013. The Trust has a number of outstanding series of shares of beneficial interest, each of which represents interests in a separate portfolio of securities.

The Trust's Declaration of Trust permits the Trustees to create additional series of shares, to issue an unlimited number of full and fractional shares of beneficial interest of each series, including the Fund, and to divide or combine the shares of any series into a greater or lesser number of shares without thereby changing the proportionate beneficial interest in the series. The assets belonging to a series are charged with the liabilities in respect of that series and all expenses, costs, charges and reserves attributable to that series only. Therefore, any creditor of any series may look only to the assets belonging to that series to satisfy the creditor's debt. Any general liabilities, expenses, costs, charges or reserves of the Trust which are not readily identifiable as pertaining to any particular series are allocated and charged by the Trustees to and among the existing series in the sole discretion of the Trustees. Each share of the Fund represents an interest in the Fund proportionately equal to the interest of each other share. Upon the Fund's liquidation, all shareholders would share pro rata in the net assets of the Fund available for distribution to shareholders.

The Trust may offer more than one class of shares of any series. Each share of a series or class represents an equal proportionate interest in that series or class with each other share of that series or class.

The shares of each series or class participate equally in the earnings, dividends and assets of the particular series or class. Expenses of the Trust which are not attributable to a specific series or class are allocated among all the series in a manner believed by management of the Trust to be fair and equitable. Shares issued do not have pre-emptive or conversion rights. Shares when issued are fully paid and non-assessable, except as set forth below. Shareholders are entitled to one vote for each share held. Shares of each series or class generally vote together, except when required under federal securities laws to vote separately on matters that only affect a particular series or class, such as the approval of distribution plans for a particular class.

The Trust is not required to hold annual meetings of shareholders but will hold special meetings of shareholders of a series or class when, in the judgment of the Board, it is necessary or desirable to submit matters for a shareholder vote. Shareholders have, under certain circumstances, the right to communicate with other shareholders in connection with requesting a meeting of shareholders for the purpose of removing one or more trustees. Shareholders also have, in certain circumstances, the right to remove one or more trustees without a meeting. No material amendment may be made to the Trust's Declaration of Trust without the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of each portfolio affected by the amendment.

The Trust's Declaration of Trust provides that, at any meeting of shareholders of the Trust or of any series or class, a shareholder servicing agent may vote any shares as to which such shareholder servicing agent is the agent of record for shareholders who are not represented in person or by proxy at the meeting, proportionately in accordance with the votes cast by holders of all shares of that portfolio otherwise represented at the meeting in person or by proxy as to which such shareholder servicing agent is the agent of record. Any shares so voted by a shareholder servicing agent will be deemed represented at the meeting for purposes of quorum requirements. Any series or class may be terminated (i) upon the merger or consolidation with, or the sale or disposition of all or substantially all of its assets to, another entity, if approved by the vote of the holders of two-thirds of its outstanding shares, except that if the Board recommends such merger, consolidation or sale or disposition of assets, the approval by vote of the holders of a majority of the series' or class' outstanding shares will be sufficient, or (ii) by the vote of the holders of a majority of its outstanding shares, or (iii) by the Board by written notice to the series' or class' shareholders. Unless each series and class is so terminated, the Trust will continue indefinitely.

Shareholders may send communications to the Board. Shareholders should send communications intended for the Board by addressing the communications to the Board, in care of the Secretary of the Trust and sending the communication to 2220 E. Route 66, Suite 226, Glendora, California 91740. A shareholder communication must (i) be in writing and be signed by the shareholder, (ii) provide contact information for the shareholder, (iii) identify the Fund to which it relates, and (iv) identify the class and number of shares held by the shareholder. The Secretary of the Trust may, in good faith, determine that a shareholder communication should not be provided to the Board because it does not reasonably relate to the Trust or its operations, management, activities, policies, service providers, Board, officers, shareholders or other matters relating to an investment in the Fund or is otherwise immaterial in nature. Other shareholder communications received by the Funds not directly addressed and sent to the Board will be reviewed and generally responded to by management, and will be forwarded to the Board only at management's discretion based on the matters contained therein.

The Declaration of Trust provides that no Trustee or officer of the Trust shall be subject to any personal liability in connection with the assets or affairs of the Trust or any of its series except for losses in connection with his or her willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of his or her duties. The Trust has also entered into an indemnification agreement with each Trustee which provides that the Trust shall advance expenses and indemnify and hold harmless the Trustee in certain circumstances against any expenses incurred by the Trustee in any proceeding arising out of or in connection with the Trustee's service to the Trust, to the maximum extent permitted by the Delaware Statutory Trust Act, the 1933 Act and the 1940 Act, and which provides for certain procedures in connection with such advancement of expenses and indemnification.

The Trust's Declaration of Trust also provides that the Trust shall maintain appropriate insurance (for example, fidelity bonding and errors and omissions insurance) for the protection of the Trust, its shareholders, trustees, officers, employees and agents covering possible tort and other liabilities.

The Declaration of Trust does not require the issuance of stock certificates. If stock certificates are issued, they must be returned by the registered owners prior to the transfer or redemption of shares represented by such certificates.

Rule 18f-2 under the 1940 Act provides that as to any investment company which has two or more series outstanding and as to any matter required to be submitted to shareholder vote, such matter is not deemed to have been effectively acted upon unless approved by the holders of a "majority" (as defined in the rule) of the voting securities of each series affected by the matter. Such separate voting requirements do not apply to the election of Trustees or the ratification of the selection of accountants. The Rule contains special provisions for cases in which an advisory contract is approved by one or more, but not all, series. A change in investment policy may go into effect as to one or more series whose holders so approve the change even though the required vote is not obtained as to the holders of other affected series.

The Trust, and the Advisor have adopted Codes of Ethics under Rule 17j-1 of the 1940 Act. These codes of ethics permit, subject to certain conditions, personnel of each of those entities to invest in securities that may be purchased or held by each Fund.

## **FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

---

Incorporated by reference herein is the Funds' Annual Reports to shareholders for the fiscal periods ended September 30, 2023, which includes the "Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm", "Schedule of Investments", "Statement of Assets and Liabilities", "Statement of Operations", "Statements of Changes in Net Assets", "Financial Highlights" and "Notes to Financial Statements" (statements are consolidated for the Funds, as applicable). A copy of the Funds' Annual Reports can be obtained at no charge by calling 1-833-AXS-ALTS (1-833-297-2587) or writing the Fund.

## APPENDIX A

### DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES RATINGS

---

#### Corporate Bonds (Including Convertible Bonds)

##### Moody's

<b>Aaa</b>	Obligations rated Aaa are judged to be of the highest quality, with minimal credit risk.
<b>Aa</b>	Obligations rated Aa are judged to be of high quality and are subject to very low credit risk.
<b>A</b>	Obligations rated A are considered upper-medium grade and are subject to low credit risk.
<b>Baa</b>	Obligations rated Baa are subject to moderate credit risk. They are considered medium-grade and as such may possess certain speculative characteristics.
<b>Ba</b>	Obligations rated Ba are judged to have speculative elements and are subject to substantial credit risk.
<b>B</b>	Obligations rated B are considered speculative and are subject to high credit risk.
<b>Caa</b>	Obligations rated Caa are judged to be of poor standing and are subject to very high credit risk.
<b>Ca</b>	Obligations rated Ca are highly speculative and are likely in, or very near, default, with some prospect of recovery.
<b>C</b>	Obligations rated C are the lowest rated class of bonds and are typically in default, with little prospect for recovery of principal or interest.
<b>Note</b>	Moody's applies numerical modifiers 1, 2, and 3 in each generic rating classification from Aa through Caa. The modifier 1 indicates that the obligation ranks in the higher end of its generic rating category; the modifier 2 indicates a mid-range ranking; and the modifier 3 indicates a ranking in the lower end of that generic rating category.

##### S&P

<b>AAA</b>	An obligation rated AAA has the highest rating assigned by Standard & Poor's. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is extremely strong.
<b>AA</b>	An obligation rated AA differs from the highest-rated obligations only in small degree. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is very strong.
<b>A</b>	An obligation rated A is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than obligations in higher-rated categories. However, the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is still strong.
<b>BBB</b>	An obligation rated BBB exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
<b>Note</b>	Obligations rated BB, B, CCC, CC, and C are regarded as having significant speculative characteristics. BB indicates the least degree of speculation and C the highest. While such obligations will likely have some quality and protective characteristics, these may be outweighed by large uncertainties or major exposures to adverse conditions.

- BB** An obligation rated BB is less vulnerable to nonpayment than other speculative issues. However, it faces major ongoing uncertainties or exposure to adverse business, financial or economic conditions, which could lead to the obligor's inadequate capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- B** An obligation rated B is more vulnerable to nonpayment than obligations rated BB, but the obligor currently has the capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation. Adverse business, financial, or economic conditions will likely impair the obligor's capacity or willingness to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- CCC** An obligation rated CCC is currently vulnerable to nonpayment, and is dependent upon favorable business, financial, and economic conditions for the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation. In the event of adverse business, financial, or economic conditions, the obligor is not likely to have the capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- CC** An obligation rated CC is currently highly vulnerable to nonpayment.
- C** The C rating may be used to cover a situation where a bankruptcy petition has been filed or similar action has been taken, but payments on this obligation are being continued.
- D** An obligation rated D is in payment default. The D rating category is used when payments on an obligation are not made on the date due even if the applicable grace period has not expired, unless Standard & Poor's believes that such payments will be made during such grace period. The D rating also will be used upon the filing of a bankruptcy petition or the taking of a similar action if payments on an obligation are jeopardized.
- Note** Plus (+) or minus (-). The ratings from AA to CCC may be modified by the addition of a plus or minus sign to show relative standing within the major rating categories. The "r" symbol is attached to the ratings of instruments with significant noncredit risks. It highlights risks to principal or volatility of expected returns, which are not addressed in the credit rating. Examples include: obligations linked or indexed to equities, currencies, or commodities; obligations exposed to severe prepayment risk-such as interest-only or principal-only mortgage securities; and obligations with unusually risky interest terms, such as inverse floaters.

### **Preferred Stock**

#### **Moody's**

- Aaa** An issue that is rated "Aaa" is considered to be a top-quality preferred stock. This rating indicates good asset protection and the least risk of dividend impairment within the universe of preferred stocks.
- Aa** An issue that is rated "Aa" is considered a high-grade preferred stock. This rating indicates that there is a reasonable assurance the earnings and asset protection will remain relatively well maintained in the foreseeable future.
- A** An issue that is rated "A" is considered to be an upper-medium grade preferred stock. While risks are judged to be somewhat greater than in the "Aaa" and "Aa" classification, earnings and asset protection are, nevertheless, expected to be maintained at adequate levels.
- Baa** An issue that is rated "Baa" is considered to be a medium-grade preferred stock, neither highly protected nor poorly secured. Earnings and asset protection appear adequate at present but may be questionable over any great length of time.

<b>Ba</b>	An issue that is rated “Ba” is considered to have speculative elements and its future cannot be considered well assured. Earnings and asset protection may be very moderate and not well safeguarded during adverse periods. Uncertainty of position characterizes preferred stocks in this class.
<b>B</b>	An issue that is rated “B” generally lacks the characteristics of a desirable investment. Assurance of dividend payments and maintenance of other terms of the issue over any long period of time may be small.
<b>Caa</b>	An issue that is rated “Caa” is likely to be in arrears on dividend payments. This rating designation does not purport to indicate the future status of payments.
<b>Ca</b>	An issue that is rated “Ca” is speculative in a high degree and is likely to be in arrears on dividends with little likelihood of eventual payments.
<b>C</b>	This is the lowest rated class of preferred or preference stock. Issues so rated can thus be regarded as having extremely poor prospects of ever attaining any real investment standing.
<b>Note</b>	Moody’s applies numerical modifiers 1, 2, and 3 in each rating classification: the modifier 1 indicates that the security ranks in the higher end of its generic rating category; the modifier 2 indicates a mid-range ranking and the modifier 3 indicates that the issue ranks in the lower end of its generic rating category.
<b><u>S&amp;P</u></b>	
<b>AAA</b>	This is the highest rating that may be assigned by Standard & Poor’s to a preferred stock issue and indicates an extremely strong capacity to pay the preferred stock obligations.
<b>AA</b>	A preferred stock issue rated AA also qualifies as a high-quality, fixed-income security. The capacity to pay preferred stock obligations is very strong, although not as overwhelming as for issues rated AAA.
<b>A</b>	An issue rated A is backed by a sound capacity to pay the preferred stock obligations, although it is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions.
<b>BB</b>	An issue rated BBB is regarded as backed by an adequate capacity to pay the preferred stock obligations. Whereas it normally exhibits adequate protection parameters, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity to make payments for a preferred stock in this category than for issues in the A category.
<b>BB, B, CCC</b>	Preferred stock rated BB, B, and CCC is regarded, on balance, as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuer’s capacity to pay preferred stock obligations. BB indicates the lowest degree of speculation and CCC the highest. While such issues will likely have some quality and protective characteristics, these are outweighed by large uncertainties or major risk exposures to adverse conditions.
<b>CC</b>	The rating CC is reserved for a preferred stock issue that is in arrears on dividends or sinking fund payments, but that is currently paying.
<b>C</b>	A preferred stock rated C is a nonpaying issue.
<b>D</b>	A preferred stock rated D is a nonpaying issue with the issuer in default on debt instruments.
<b>N.R.</b>	This indicates that no rating has been requested, that there is insufficient information on which to base a rating, or that Standard & Poor’s does not rate a particular type of obligation as a matter of policy.
<b>Note</b>	Plus (+) or minus (-). To provide more detailed indications of preferred stock quality, ratings from AA to CCC may be modified by the addition of a plus or minus sign to show relative standing within the major rating categories.

## **Short Term Ratings**

### **Moody's**

Moody's employs the following three designations, all judged to be investment grade, to indicate the relative repayment ability of rated issuers:

- Prime-1** Issuers rated Prime-1 (or supporting institutions) have a superior ability for repayment of senior short-term debt obligations. Prime-1 repayment ability will often be evidenced by many of the following characteristics:
- Leading market positions in well-established industries.
  - High rates of return on funds employed.
  - Conservative capitalization structure with moderate reliance on debt and ample asset protection.
  - Broad margins in earnings coverage of fixed financial charges and high internal cash generation.
  - Well-established access to a range of financial markets and assured sources of alternate liquidity.
- Prime-2** Issuers rated Prime-2 (or supporting institutions) have a strong ability for repayment of senior short-term debt obligations. This will normally be evidenced by many of the characteristics cited above but to a lesser degree. Earnings trends and coverage ratios, while sound, may be more subject to variation. Capitalization characteristics, while still appropriate, may be more affected by external conditions. Ample alternate liquidity is maintained.
- Prime-3** Issuers rated Prime-3 (or supporting institutions) have an acceptable ability for repayment of senior short-term obligations. The effect of industry characteristics and market compositions may be more pronounced. Variability in earnings and profitability may result in changes in the level of debt protection measurements and may require relatively high financial leverage. Adequate alternate liquidity is maintained.
- Not Prime** Issuers rated Not Prime do not fall within any of the Prime rating categories.

### **S&P**

- A-1** A short-term obligation rated A-1 is rated in the highest category by Standard & Poor's. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is strong. Within this category, certain obligations are designated with a plus sign (+). This indicates that the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on these obligations is extremely strong.
- A-2** A short-term obligation rated A-2 is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than obligations in higher rating categories. However, the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is satisfactory.
- A-3** A short-term obligation rated A-3 exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
- B** A short-term obligation rated B is regarded as having significant speculative characteristics. The obligor currently has the capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation; however, it faces major ongoing uncertainties, which could lead to the obligor's inadequate capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.



- C** A short-term obligation rated C is currently vulnerable to nonpayment and is dependent upon favorable business, financial, and economic conditions for the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
  
- D** A short-term obligation rated D is in payment default. The D rating category is used when payments on an obligation are not made on the date due even if the applicable grace period has not expired, unless Standard & Poor's believes that such payments will be made during such grace period. The D rating also will be used upon the filing of a bankruptcy petition or the taking of a similar action if payments on an obligation are jeopardized.

**APPENDIX B**  
**PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

---

**INVESTMENT MANAGERS SERIES TRUST II**  
**PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

Investment Managers Series Trust II (the “Trust”) is registered as an open-end investment company under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (“1940 Act”). The Trust offers multiple series (each, a “Fund” and, collectively, the “Funds”). Consistent with its fiduciary duties and pursuant to Rule 30b1-4 under the 1940 Act (the “Proxy Rule”), the Board of Trustees of the Trust (the “Board”) has adopted this proxy voting policy on behalf of the Trust (the “Policy”) to reflect its commitment to ensure that proxies are voted in a manner consistent with the best interests of the Funds’ shareholders.

**Delegation of Proxy Voting Authority to Fund Advisors**

The Board believes that the investment advisor of each Fund (each, an “Advisor” and, collectively, the “Advisors”), as the entity that selects the individual securities that comprise its Fund’s portfolio, is the most knowledgeable and best-suited to make decisions on how to vote proxies of portfolio companies held by that Fund. The Trust will therefore defer to, and rely on, the Advisor of each Fund to make decisions on how to cast proxy votes on behalf of such Fund. An Advisor may delegate this responsibility to a Fund’s Sub-Advisor.

The Trust hereby designates the Advisor of each Fund as the entity responsible for exercising proxy voting authority with regard to securities held in the Fund’s investment portfolio. Consistent with its duties under this Policy, each Advisor shall monitor and review corporate transactions of corporations in which the Fund has invested, obtain all information sufficient to allow an informed vote on all proxy solicitations, ensure that all proxy votes are cast in a timely fashion, and maintain all records required to be maintained by the Fund under the Proxy Rule and the 1940 Act. Each Advisor will perform these duties in accordance with the Advisor’s proxy voting policy, a copy of which will be presented to the Board for its review. Each Advisor will promptly provide to the Trust’s Chief Compliance Officer (“CCO”) updates to its proxy voting policy as they are adopted and implemented, and the Trust’s CCO will then report such updates to the Board.

**Availability of Proxy Voting Policy and Records Available to Fund Shareholders**

If a Fund or an Advisor has a website, a copy of the Advisor’s proxy voting policy and this Policy may be posted on such website. A copy of such policies and of each Fund’s proxy voting record shall also be made available, without charge, upon request of any shareholder of the Fund, by calling the applicable Fund’s toll-free telephone number as printed in the Fund’s prospectus. The Trust’s transfer agent will notify the Advisor of any such request of proxy voting procedures. The Advisor shall reply to any Fund shareholder request within three (3) business days of receipt of the request, by first-class mail or other means designed to ensure equally prompt delivery.

Each Advisor will provide a complete annual voting record, as required by the Proxy Rule, for each series of the Trust for which it acts as advisor, to the Trust’s co-administrator no later than July 31<sup>st</sup> of each year. The Trust’s co-administrator, MFAC, will file a report based on such record on Form N-PX on an annual basis with the Securities and Exchange Commission no later than August 31<sup>st</sup> of each year.

Each Advisor is responsible for providing its current proxy voting policies and procedures and any subsequent amendments to the Trust’s CCO. SEC Form N-PX is filed with respect to each Fund by MFAC (acting as filing agent), by no later than August 31<sup>st</sup> of each year. Each such filing details all proxies voted on behalf of the Fund for the prior twelve months ended June 30<sup>th</sup>. In connection with each filing on behalf of the Fund, the Advisor’s CCO must sign and return to MFAC no later than July 30<sup>th</sup> a Form N-PX Certification stating that the advisor has adopted proxy voting policies and procedures in compliance with the SEC’s Proxy Voting Rule.

**AXS INVESTMENTS LLC**  
**PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

---

**A. PURPOSE AND GENERAL STATEMENT**

The purpose of these proxy voting policies and procedures (the “Policy”) is to set forth the principles and procedures by which AXS votes with respect to securities held in Fund portfolios for which AXS exercises voting authority (generally where AXS has not delegated proxy voting discretion to a Fund’s subadvisor). For purposes of this Policy, a “Vote” includes any proxy and any shareholder vote or consent for any security held by a client account for which AXS exercises voting authority.

This Policy been designed to help ensure that Votes are voted in the best interests of the applicable Fund in accordance with AXS’s fiduciary duties and Rule 206(4)-6 under the Act.

**B. POLICY**

Votes must be cast in the best interests of each Fund. AXS’s guiding principle in this regard is that it is generally in the best interest of the client to cast Votes in a manner designed to maximize the economic value of the Fund’s holdings, taking into account the Fund’s investment goals and objectives (as set forth in its current registration statement) and all other relevant circumstances at the time of the vote. AXS does not permit voting decisions to be influenced in any manner that is contrary to this principle. AXS recognizes that, in rare instances, the interest of one Fund with respect to a Vote may conflict with the interests of AXS or another Fund. Any conflicts of interest relating to the casting of Votes, regardless of whether actual or perceived, will be addressed in accordance with this Policy.

It is AXS’s general policy to vote or give consent on all matters presented to shareholders in any Vote, and these policies and procedures have been designed with this in mind. However, AXS reserves the right to abstain from any particular Vote or otherwise withhold its Vote or consent on any matter if, in the judgement of AXS’s CCO or the relevant AXS investment professional, the costs associated with voting such Vote outweigh the benefits to the applicable Fund, or if the circumstances make such an abstention or withholding otherwise advisable and in the best interests of the Fund.

**C. GUIDELINES**

The voting guidelines below summarize AXS’s general positions on various common issues, and provides a general indication of how Fund portfolio securities for which AXS has voting discretion will be voted on proposals dealing with particular issues.

These voting guidelines are just that — guidelines. The guidelines are not exhaustive and do not address all potential voting issues. Because the circumstances of individual companies are so varied, there may be instances when AXS does not cast Fund Votes in strict adherence to these guidelines.

**1. Management Proposals**

The majority of matters presented to shareholders are proposals made by an issuer’s management, which have usually been approved and recommended by the issuer’s board of directors. For routine matters (which generally means that such matter will not measurably change the structure, management, control or operation of the company and are consistent with customary industry standards and practices), AXS will typically vote in accordance with the recommendation of the company’s management; unless, in AXS’s opinion, such recommendation is not in the best interests of the Fund.

Generally, in the absence of any unusual or non-routine circumstances, the AXS supports the following items:

- [ ] Ratification of appointment of independent auditors;
- [ ] General updating/corrective amendments to charter;
- [ ] Increase in common share authorization for a stock split or share dividend;

- Stock option plans that are incentive based and not excessive; and
- Regular, uncontested elections of directors and payment of fees (unless such fees exceed market standards).

Non-routine matters may involve a variety of issues. Therefore, AXS will typically cast Votes on non-routine matters on a case-by-case basis, in each case casting Votes in a manner that AXS believes is in the best interests of the applicable client based on the considerations described above. The following will typically be considered “non-routine” matters requiring case-by-case analysis:

- Directors’ liability and indemnity proposals;
- Executive compensation plans;
- Contested elections of directors;
- Mergers, acquisitions, and other restructurings submitted to a shareholder vote;
- Anti-takeover and related provisions.

AXS will generally Vote against proposals to classify a board, absent special circumstances indicating that shareholder interests would be better served by this structure.

## **2. Shareholder Proposals**

In general, AXS casts Votes in accordance with the recommendation of the company’s board of directors on all shareholder proposals. However, AXS will support shareholder proposals that it believes are in the best interests of the Fund based on the considerations described above. In addition:

Generally, shareholder proposals related to the following items are supported:

- Confidential voting;
- Declassifying a board, absent special circumstances indicating that shareholder interests would be better served by a classified board structure;
- Requiring director nominees to receive support from holders of a majority of votes cast or a majority of shares outstanding in order to be (re)elected.
- Bylaw and charter amendments only with shareholder approval;
- Eliminating supermajority vote requirements in the company’s bylaws and charter documents; and
- Requiring a majority of independent directors on a board.

Generally, shareholder proposals related to the following items are not supported:

- Limitations on the tenure of directors;
- Cumulative voting;
- Restrictions related to social, political, or special interest issues that impact the ability of the company to do business or be competitive and that have a significant financial or vested interest impact; and
- Reports that are costly to provide or expenditures that are of a non-business in nature or would provide no pertinent information from a shareholder perspective.

#### **D. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

Due to the nature of AXS's business and its ownership, AXS believes it is unlikely that conflicts of interest will arise when casting Votes. Each Fund's investment team, however, is responsible for monitoring Votes for any actual or perceived conflicts of interest. If at any time any Supervised Person becomes aware of any potential, actual, or perceived conflict of interest regarding any particular Vote(s) to be cast, he or she is required to contact AXS's CCO immediately, who will review the Vote(s) in advance to ensure that AXS proposed Vote(s) is consistent with this Policy and AXS's duties to the applicable Fund.

If a conflict of interest is evident, the CCO will:

- advise IMST II's Chief Compliance Officer (or other relevant IMST II officer) of the conflict in advance of casting the Vote;
- use his or her best judgement to address the conflict and ensure that it is resolved in accordance with his or her independent assessment of the best interests of the Fund.

Where the CCO deems appropriate in his or her sole discretion, unaffiliated third parties (such as proxy voting services) may be used to help resolve conflicts. In this regard, the CCO shall have the power to retain independent fiduciaries, consultants, or professionals to assist with Voting decisions and/or to delegate voting or consent powers to such fiduciaries, consultants, or professionals.

#### **E. VOTING PROCEDURES**

All AXS personnel are responsible for promptly forwarding all proxy materials, consents or voting requests or notices, or materials related thereto, to the CCO and to the applicable investment professional(s) primarily responsible for managing the applicable Fund's portfolio. The CCO shall be responsible for ensuring that each Vote is voted in a timely manner and as otherwise required by the terms of such Vote.

All Voting decisions initially are to be referred to the appropriate investment professional for determination. In most cases, the most senior Portfolio Manager of the applicable Fund, or his or her designee, will make the decision as to the appropriate vote for any particular Vote.

The Portfolio Manager will inform the CCO of any such Voting decision, and if the CCO does not object to such decision as a result of his or her conflict of interest review, the Vote will be voted in such manner. If the Portfolio Manager and the CCO are unable to arrive at an agreement as to how to vote, then the CCO may consult with independent third-parties (including a proxy voting service) as to the appropriate vote.

#### **F. RECORDKEEPING**

In accordance with Rule 204-2 under the Act, AXS must retain (i) its proxy voting policies and procedures; (ii) proxy statements received regarding Fund/client securities; (iii) records of its votes on behalf of the Funds; (iv) records of Fund requests for proxy voting information; and (v) any documents prepared by AXS that were material to making a decision how to vote, or that memorialized the basis for the decision. AXS may rely on proxy statements filed on the SEC's EDGAR system (instead of keeping its own copies), and may rely on proxy statements and records of its votes cast that are maintained by a proxy voting service provider.

**KELLNER MANAGEMENT, L.P.**  
**PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

---

Each proxy issue will be considered individually. The following is a list of issues and voting responses to be used as a guideline in voting proposals contained in the proxy statements, but will not be used as rigid rules.

1. Issues regarding the issuer’s board entrenchment and anti-takeover measures such as the following: Oppose
  - a. Proposals to stagger board members’ terms;
  - b. Proposals to limit the ability of shareholders to call special meetings;
  - c. Proposals to require super majority votes;
  - d. Proposals requesting excessive increases in authorized common or preferred shares where management provides no explanation for the use or need of these additional shares;
  - e. Proposals regarding “fair price” provisions;
  - f. Proposals regarding “poison pill” provisions; and
  - g. Proposals permitting “green mail”.
2. Providing cumulative voting rights Oppose
3. “Social issues,” unless specific client guidelines supersede, e.g., restrictions regarding South Africa. Oppose
4. Election of directors recommended by management, except if there is a proxy fight. Approve
5. Election of auditors recommended by management, unless seeking to replace if there exists a dispute over policies. Approve
6. Date and place of annual meeting. Approve
7. Limitation on charitable contributions or fees paid to lawyers. Approve
8. Ratification of directors’ actions on routine matters since previous annual meeting. Approve
9. Confidential voting Approve  
 Confidential voting is most often proposed by shareholders as a means of eliminating undue management pressure in shareholders regarding their vote on proxy issues. The Advisor will generally approve these proposals as shareholders can later divulge their votes to management on a selective basis if a legitimate reason arises.
10. Limiting directors’ liability Approve
11. Eliminate preemptive right Approve  
 Preemptive rights give current shareholders the opportunity to maintain their current percentage ownership through any subsequent equity offerings. These provisions are no longer common in the U.S., and can restrict management’s ability to raise new capital. The Advisor generally approves the elimination of preemptive rights, but will oppose the elimination of limited preemptive rights, e.g., on proposed issues representing more than an acceptable level of total dilution.
12. Employee Stock Purchase Plan Approve
13. Establish 401(k) Plan Approve
14. Pay directors solely in stocks Case-by-Case
15. Eliminate director mandatory retirement policy Case-by-Case
16. Rotate annual meeting location/date Case-by-Case
17. Option and stock grants to management and directors Case-by-Case
18. Allowing indemnification of directors and/or officers after reviewing the applicable laws and extent of protection requested. Case-by-Case

Where a proxy proposal raises a material conflict between Advisor's interests and a client's interest, the Advisor will resolve such a conflict in the manner as follows.

**Vote in Accordance with the Guidelines.**

To the extent that the Advisor has little or no discretion to deviate from the guidelines with respect to the proposal in question, the Advisor shall vote in accordance with such pre-determined voting policy.

**Obtain Consent of Clients.**

To the extent that Advisor has discretion to deviate from the guidelines with respect to the proposal in question, the Advisor will disclose the conflict to the relevant clients and obtain their consent to the proposed vote prior to voting the securities. The disclosure to the client will include sufficient detail regarding the matter to be voted on and the nature of Advisor's conflict so that the client would be able to make an informed decision regarding the vote. If a client does not respond to such a conflict disclosure request or denies the request, the Advisor will abstain from voting the securities held by that client's account.

**Client Directive to Use an Independent Third Party.**

Alternatively, a client may, in writing, specifically direct the Advisor to forward all proxy matters in which Advisor has a conflict of interest regarding the client's securities to an identified independent third party for review and recommendation. Where such independent third party's recommendation is received on a timely basis, the Advisor will vote all such proxies in accordance with such third party's recommendation. If the third party's recommendation is not timely received, the Advisor will abstain from voting the securities held by that client's account.

The operations officer in consultation with the portfolio manager will review the proxy proposal for conflicts of interest as part of the overall vote review process. All material conflicts of interest so identified by the Advisor will be addressed as described above.

## **QUANTITATIVE VALUE TECHNOLOGIES LLC**

### **PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

---

#### **OVERVIEW**

The Adviser generally does not take any action or render any advice with respect to voting proxies solicited by, or with respect to, the issuers of any client securities, except to the extent otherwise required by law. It is the Adviser's policy not to vote proxies for standard SMA's. However, this policy does not apply to certain clients who signed investment management agreements prior to the revision of this policy in May 2014, as well as certain institutional accounts as articulated below. As the Adviser exercises voting authority with respect to certain clients' securities, the following Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures have been adopted pursuant to Rule 206(4)-6 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. These Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures are reasonably designed to ensure that the Adviser votes proxies in the best interests of its clients without regard to the Adviser's interest. The procedures also address material conflicts between the Adviser's interests and those of its clients. The Adviser will consider only those factors that relate to the client's investment, including how its vote will economically impact and affect the value of the client's investment.

#### **RESPONSIBILITY**

The Chief Executive Officer and Chief Operating Officer are responsible for ensuring that proxies are voted in a manner consistent with the interests of clients.

#### **GENERAL POLICY**

Generally, the Adviser will support company management teams which, in its opinion, have the intent and ability to maximize shareholder wealth over the long term, consistent with the Adviser's belief that long-term shareholder value need not be sacrificed in favor of short-term gains. Accordingly, it is the general policy of the Adviser to vote in accordance with management recommendations on proposals, with the following exceptions:

- (1) When proposals diminish rights of shareholders or diminish management or board accountability to shareholders to an extent that the Adviser determines is inconsistent with the long-term interests of shareholders; and
- (2) There may be times when refraining from voting a proxy is in the client's best interest, such as when the adviser determines that the cost of voting the proxy exceeds the expected benefit to the client. On occasion, votes may be withheld for certain directors to show the Adviser's disfavor with a company's Chief Executive Officer or other directors.

#### **CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

For purposes of this policy, a "material conflict of interest" is defined as a non-routine relationship between the issuer of a security and the Adviser or an affiliate of which the Adviser has actual knowledge that may affect the Adviser's judgment in voting securities in the best interest of client accounts. Material conflicts of interest may arise when the Adviser or an affiliate serves as investment adviser or fiduciary for the issuer or when an affiliate has a significant relationship with the issuer. Immaterial conflicts of interest may arise when the Adviser or an affiliate has a relationship with an issuer (*e.g.*, a routine relationship such as a checking account) that does not affect the Adviser's judgment. When the Adviser votes proxies based on the General Policy described above, it demonstrates that the vote was not the product of a material conflict of interest because the policy requires minimal discretion on the part of the Adviser. However, in the event that the Adviser determines that there is a material conflict of interest with respect to the proxy vote, the Adviser will vote client securities based upon the recommendations of an independent third party.

#### **DEVIATIONS FROM GENERAL POLICY**

The Adviser will, at all times, make a best effort to vote all proxies in the best interest of its clients. However, there may be some instances in which the Adviser will choose not to vote or may not be able to vote a proxy. Issues that may affect the Adviser's ability to vote include extraordinary requirements such as share blocking or the requirement to vote



the security in person. All votes in which the Adviser has chosen to override the General Policy will be reviewed on a quarterly basis by the Chief Compliance Officer or designee. The Chief Operating Officer is responsible for maintaining the documentation regarding any vote overrides and third-party recommendations.

### **ERISA PLANS**

If the investment management agreement is entered into by a trustee or other fiduciary on behalf of an employee retirement income plan subject to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (“ERISA”), including a person meeting the definition of “fiduciary” under ERISA, the trustee or other fiduciary generally retains the right and obligation to vote proxies. In such cases, the Adviser is generally precluded from voting proxies for the plan. Consistent with applicable rules and regulations of the securities exchanges relating to providing proxies by member organizations, under certain circumstances, with respect to separately managed accounts, the client may delegate to us the obligations to vote proxies on the client’s behalf. ERISA plans managed by the Adviser shall be administered consistent with the terms of the governing plan documents and applicable provisions of ERISA. In cases where the Adviser has been delegated sole proxy voting discretion, these policies and procedures will be followed subject to the fiduciary responsibility standards of ERISA. These standards generally require fiduciaries to act prudently and to discharge their duties solely in the interest of participants and beneficiaries. The Department of Labor has indicated that voting decisions of ERISA fiduciaries must generally focus on the course that would most likely increase the value of the stock being voted. The documents governing ERISA individual account plans may set forth various procedures for voting “employer securities” held by the plan. Where authority over the investment of plan assets is granted to plan participants, many individual account plans provide that proxies for employer securities will be voted in accordance with directions received from plan participants as to shares allocated to their plan accounts. In some cases, the governing plan documents may further provide that unallocated shares and/or allocated shares for which no participant directions are received will be voted in accordance with a proportional voting method in which such shares are voted proportionately in the same manner as are allocated shares for which directions from participants have been received.

### **MUTUAL FUND**

Cognios is the investment adviser to the AXS Market Neutral Fund and the AXS Alternative Value Fund (the “Mutual Funds”). UMB Bank, N.A. is the custodian of the Mutual Funds. In conjunction with US Bank, the Fund Administrator, UMB Fund Services, Inc. and Mutual Fund Administration, LLC, will prepare and file Form N-PX in accordance with the Mutual Funds proxy votes.

All proxies will be voted in accordance with any applicable investment restrictions of the Mutual Funds and, to the extent applicable, any resolutions or other instructions approved by an authorized person of the Mutual Funds. The Adviser shall provide the Mutual Fund’s Compliance Departments with information regarding any identified conflicts of interest, documentation as to how the vote was cast and who cast the vote.

### **INSTITUTIONAL CLIENTS**

Cognios is the investment adviser for a number of institutional clients. The Adviser will provide proxy voting services for institutional clients that meet the following criteria:

- The client must be an institutional investor (i.e. no retail and/or high-net-worth clients)
- The client must have greater than \$5M in AUM with Cognios

The proxy votes will be cast “For” Management proposals, “Against” Shareholder proposals, and “Abstain” on all others. Accommodations cannot be made for voting requests that fall outside of those parameters.

### **PROCEDURES**

The Adviser is responsible for voting the proxies related to certain legacy SMA and institutional accounts, the Mutual Funds, and/or the Private Fund. The Adviser has engaged an independent proxy voting service which is responsible for receipt of proxy ballots, vote execution, vote record maintenance, and vote reporting. The votes will be cast according to the General Policy noted above. If new accounts are added, the Adviser will work with the voting service and the

custodian to get the accounts set up in the voting services' system to allow for automated voting. Upon request, the Adviser will provide copies of its Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures to clients, as well as information regarding how proxies were voted. The Chief Compliance Officer or designee will periodically review the Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures.

### **BOOKS AND RECORDS**

Pursuant to Rule 204-2 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Adviser will retain the following items in its books and records:

- (1) proxy voting policies and procedures;
- (2) proxy statements received regarding client securities;
- (3) records of votes cast on behalf of clients;
- (4) records of client requests for proxy voting information; and
- (5) any documents prepared by the Adviser that were material to making a decision how to vote, or that memorialized the basis for the decision.

The Adviser may rely on proxy statements filed on the EDGAR system instead of keeping its own copies. The Adviser may also rely on proxy statements and records of proxy votes cast by the Adviser that are maintained with a proxy voting service, if the Adviser has obtained an understanding from the proxy voting service to provide a copy of the documents promptly upon request.



## **Proxy Voting Guidelines**

**August 1, 2022**

The following pages describe the proxy voting guidelines espoused by Green Alpha Advisors, LLC (“Green Alpha Advisors” or “Green Alpha”). These guidelines are used as a reference source for voting securities, now and in the future, in investment strategies — including separately managed accounts — offered by Green Alpha Advisors.

Green Alpha Advisors votes on a case-by-case basis, however these proxy voting guidelines assist with voting decisions in specific circumstances.

Green Alpha Advisors changes these guidelines as and when necessary to adopt them to the evolving set of issues and governance best practices addressed by corporate boards.

This document is organized into two parts. The first part addresses voting guidelines for management proposals. The second part concentrates on voting guidelines for proposals submitted by shareholders.

## Table of Contents

<b>PART 1: MANAGEMENT PROPOSALS</b> .....	<b>B-97</b>
Board of Directors .....	B-97
Capital Structures .....	B-98
Changes to Corporate Structure .....	B-99
Takeover Defense Activity .....	B-100
Compensation & Incentive Plans .....	B-102
Other Management Proposals .....	B-104
<b>PART 2: SHAREHOLDER PROPOSALS</b> .....	<b>B-105</b>
Board of Directors & Governance .....	B-105
Auditors .....	B-107
Takeover Defense Activity .....	B-107
Compensation & Incentive Plans .....	B-108
Corporate Influence .....	B-109
Environmental Issues .....	B-110
Human Rights, Labor, & Social Issues .....	B-110
Military Involvement .....	B-111
Other Shareholder Proposals .....	B-112

## PART 1: MANAGEMENT PROPOSALS

### Board of Directors

We seek boards that will effectively oversee management. We believe that diverse boards are a key component of effective oversight and governance.

#### Elect Directors

**Withhold** votes from all nominees if the board lacks an independent chairperson or a lead independent director.

**Withhold** votes from **all** nominees **if** the board lacks an audit, compensation, or nominating committee.

**Withhold** votes from **all** male nominees **if** the board does not include at least two female directors; vote **for** female nominee(s), unless the female nominee(s) do not pass other Green Alpha director qualifications.

When gender, ethnic, or other identity-based diversity data is provided in proxy statement, generally vote **for** any directors who bring diversity to the board, barring other governance concerns.

**Withhold** votes from **all** nominees **if** the board did not act to implement a policy requested by a shareholder proposal that received majority voting support in the prior two years.

**Withhold** votes from **all** nominees **if** the board adopted or renewed a poison pill without shareholder approval during the current or prior year.

**Withhold** votes from **any** non-independent or employee nominee who serves on the audit, compensation, or nominating committee. (US companies only, case-by-case basis for foreign domiciled companies)

**Withhold** votes from **any** non-independent nominee if **50%** or more of the directors are not independent.

**Withhold** votes from **any** nominee who serves on the compensation committee if named executive compensation is deemed to be excessive relative to revenues/net sales, earnings or other factors.

Generally, **Withhold** votes from **any** nominee who serves on the audit committee **if** the fees paid by the company for non-audit services in the prior fiscal year exceed **25%** of the aggregate fees paid to the company's outside auditor.

Generally, **Withhold** votes from **any** nominee if there are any pending legal actions against them related to financial or criminal concerns.

Generally, **Withhold** votes from **any** nominee who attended less than **75%** of the board and committee meetings that they were scheduled to attend during the previous fiscal year.

#### Approve Board Size

Vote **against if** the proposal reduces the board size and the company has cumulative voting.

Generally, vote **against if** the proposed maximum board size is greater than **13** directors.

Generally, vote **against if** the proposed minimum board size is less than **4** directors.

#### Give Board Authority to Set Board Size

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to give the board the authority to set the size of the board as needed without shareholder approval.

## Removal of Directors

Vote **against if** the proposal limits the removal of directors to cases where there is legal cause.

Vote **against if** the proposal would allow for the removal of directors without cause.

## No Shareholder Approval to Fill Vacancy

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to allow the directors to fill vacancies on the board without shareholder approval.

## Approve Classified Board

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to adopt a classified board. However, in cases where a hostile takeover attempt is underway, this may be an important protection.

## Repeal Classified Board

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to repeal classified board.

## Adopt Director Liability Provision

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to limit the liability of directors.

## Capital Structures

### Increase Authorized Common Stock

Generally vote **against if** the increase is intended for a stock split.

Generally, vote **against if** the increase is an anti-takeover defense, unless Green Alpha agrees with management on a case-by-case basis.

Generally, vote **against if** quantity of increase in authorized shares is not specified.

### Approve Common Stock Issuance

Generally, vote **against if** the dilution represents more than **20** percent of current outstanding voting power before the stock issuance.

Generally, vote **against if** the stock would be issued at a discount to the fair market value.

Generally, vote **against if** the issued common stock has superior voting rights.

### Approve Issuance or Exercise of Stock Warrants

Vote **against if** the warrants, when exercised, would exceed 20 percent of the outstanding voting power.

### Authorize Preferred Stock

Generally, vote **against if** the board has unlimited rights to set the terms and conditions of the shares.

Generally, vote **against if** the dilution represents more than **20 percent** of the current total outstanding voting power before the stock issuance.

#### Increase Authorized Preferred Stock

Generally, vote **against if** the board has unlimited rights to set the terms and conditions of the shares.

#### Approve Issuance or Conversion of Preferred Stock

Generally, vote **against if** the shares have voting rights superior to those of other shareholders.

#### Authorize Dual Class Stock

Generally, vote **against if** the shares have inferior or superior voting rights.

#### Increase Authorized Dual Class Stock

Generally, vote **against if** it will allow the company to issue additional shares with superior voting rights

#### Approve Stock Split

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to approve a stock split

#### Approve Reverse Stock Split

Vote **against if** the company does not intend to proportionally reduce the number of authorized shares.

#### Approve Stock Repurchase Program

Generally, vote **against**, unless the company intends to utilize the repurchased shares to fulfill its obligations to employees pursuant to approved incentive plans.

### **Changes to Corporate Structure**

#### Approve Merger/Acquisition

Given the multitude of factors that influence a merger/acquisition and the material financial impact that M&A activity may have on a client's portfolio, we must vote mergers/acquisitions on a case-by-case basis. As with any vote on a client's behalf, our first and foremost consideration is the vote's financial materiality for our clients. Rationale behind a specific merger/acquisition vote is available upon request by any Green Alpha client.

Factors considered by the Investment Committee include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Offer price versus Investment Committee's valuation versus market price
- Restrictions on or termination of share classes as a result of merger
- Whether the clients' shares will become subordinate as a result of the merger
- Whether entity resulting from merger/acquisition will qualify as a Next Economy company

Generally, vote **against if** the company's board did not obtain a fairness opinion from a professional third party.

#### Approve Reincorporation

Generally, vote **against if** the proposal would reduce shareholder rights.

#### Approve Leveraged Buyout

Vote **against if** the company's board did not obtain a fairness opinion from a professional third party.

#### Eliminate Cumulative Voting

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to eliminate cumulative voting.

#### Adopt Cumulative Voting

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to adopt cumulative voting.

#### Amend Bylaws to Implement Majority Voting

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to implement majority voting.

### **Takeover Defense Activity**

#### Adopt Poison Pill

Generally, vote **against if** the company has a classified board.

Vote **against if** the poison pill does not have a "sunset" provision.

Vote **against if** the poison pill does not have a TIDE provision. (Three-Year Independent Director Evaluation.)

Vote **against if** the poison pill trigger is less than **20%**.

#### Eliminate Special Meeting

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to eliminate shareholders' right to call a special meeting.

#### Limit Special Meeting

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to limit shareholders' right to call a special meeting.

#### Restore Special Meeting

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to restore shareholders' right to call a special meeting.

#### Eliminate Written Consent

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to eliminate shareholders' right to act by written consent.

#### Limit Written Consent

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to limit shareholders' right to act by written consent.



#### Restore Written Consent

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to restore shareholders' right to act by written consent.

#### Adopt Supermajority Requirement

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to establish a supermajority vote provision to approve merger or other business combination.

#### Amend Supermajority Requirement

Vote **against if** the amendment would increase the vote required to approve the transaction.

Vote **against if** the amendment increases the vote requirement above **50%** of the outstanding shares.

#### Eliminate Supermajority Requirement

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to eliminate a supermajority vote provision to approve merger or other business combination.

#### Adopt Supermajority Lock-In

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to adopt supermajority vote requirements (lock-ins) to change certain bylaw or charter provisions.

#### Amend Supermajority Lock-In

Vote **against if** the changes would increase the vote requirement above **50%** of the outstanding shares.

Vote **against if** the changes would result in a complete Lock-In on all of the charter and bylaw provisions.

#### Eliminate Supermajority Lock-In

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to eliminate supermajority vote requirements (lock-ins) to change certain bylaw or charter provisions.

#### Adopt Fair Price Provision

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal that establishes a fair price provision.

#### Repeal Fair Price Provision

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to repeal a fair price provision.

#### Adopt Anti-Greenmail Provision

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to limit the payment of greenmail.

#### Adopt Advance Notice Requirement

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal to adopt advance notice requirements.

## Opt Out of State Takeover Law

Generally, vote **against** a management proposal seeking to opt out of a state takeover statutory provision.

## Opt Into State Takeover Law

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal seeking to opt into a state takeover statutory provision.

## Compensation & Incentive Plans

### Approve, on an Advisory Basis, Named Executive Officer Compensation

Vote **against if** named executive compensation is deemed to be excessive relative to revenues/net sales and earnings, or proxy materials are limited in scope and analysis.

Vote **against if** compensation plan awards are materially based on per-share metrics, for example, EPS, TSR, stock price performance, cash flow per share, etc.

Vote **for if** named executive compensation is reasonable given current company incentive programs and recent achievements.

Vote **against if** any non-independent director serves on compensation committee.

Generally, vote **against if** LTIP awards are based only on length of service.

Generally, vote **against** compensation plans if the at-risk pay mix is not material.

### Recommend, on an Advisory Basis, the Frequency of the Stockholder Vote to Approve Executive Compensation

Always vote **1 year** when frequency of stockholder vote to approve executive compensation is proposed.

### Adopt Employee Stock Ownership Plans

Vote **against if** the plan dilution is more than **10%**.

Vote **against if** the plan allows non-qualified options to be priced at less than **80%** of the fair market value on the grant date.

Vote **against if** there is not a cap on shares that can be purchased.

Vote **against if** the company does not expense shares.

### Adopt Long-Term (Stock) Incentive Plan

Vote **against if** the plan dilution is more than **10%**.

Vote **against if** the plan allows non-qualified options to be priced at less than **80%** of the fair market value on the grant date.

Vote **against if** the plan has a share replenishment feature (evergreen plan) — that is, it adds a specified number or percentage of outstanding shares for awards each year.

Vote **against if** the plan allows for multiple awards and does not set a limit on the number of shares that can be granted as award other than options.

Vote **against if** the plan permits the award of time-lapsing restricted stock that fully vest in less than **3** years.

Vote **against if** the company does not expense stock options.

Vote **against if** the minimum vesting period for options granted under it is less than **3** years.

#### Amend Long-Term (Stock) Incentive Plan

Vote **against if** the amendment allows options to be priced at less than **80%** fair market value on the grant date.

Vote **against if** the amendment adds time-lapsing restricted stock awards that fully vest in less than **3** years.

Vote **against if** the amendment allows for multiple awards and does not set a limit on the number of shares that can be granted as awards other than options.

#### Add Shares to Long-Term (Stock) Incentive Plan

Vote **against if** the dilution is more than **10%**.

Vote **against if** the plan allows non-qualified options to be priced at less than **80%** of the fair market value on the grant date.

Vote **against if** the plan does not set a limit on the number of shares that can be granted as awards other than options.

Vote **against if** the plan permits the award of time-lapsing restricted stock that fully vest in less than **3** years.

Vote **against if** the company does not expense stock options.

Vote **against if** the minimum vesting period for options granted under it is less than **3** years.

#### Extend Term of Stock Incentive Plan

Vote **against if** the compensation committee is not fully independent.

Vote **against if** the plan allows non-qualified options to be priced at less than **80%** of the fair market value on the grant date.

Vote **against if** the plan allows for multiple awards and does not set a limit on the number of shares that can be granted as awards other than options.

Vote **against if** the plan permits the award of time-lapsing restricted stock that fully vest in less than **3** years.

Vote **against if** the proposed plan allows for the accelerated vesting of awards upon shareholder approval of a merger or similar business transaction.

Vote **against if** the company does not expense stock options.

Vote **against if** the minimum vesting period for options granted under it is less than **3** years.

#### Amend Director Stock Incentive Plan

Vote **against if** the amendment would permit the granting of non-formula, discretionary awards.

Vote **against if** the amendment would provide an incentive to receive shares instead of cash.

Vote **against if** the amendment adds time-lapsing restricted stock awards that fully vest in less than **3** years.

#### Amend Director Stock Award Plan

Vote **against if** the amendment adds time-lapsing restricted stock that vest in less than **3** years.

Vote **against if** the amendment would permit the granting of non-formula, discretionary awards.

Vote **against if** the proposed amendment would include an incentive to receive shares instead of cash.

#### Adopt Employee Stock Purchase Plan

Vote **against if** the proposed plan allows employees to purchase stock at less than **80%** of the stock's fair market value.

Vote **against if** the equity dilution is more than 10%.

#### Amend Employee Stock Purchase Plan

Vote **against if** the proposal allows employees to purchase stock at prices of less than **80%** of the stock's fair market value.

#### Add Shares to Employee Stock Purchase Plan

Vote **against if** the proposal allows employees to purchase stock at prices of less than **80%** of the stock's fair market value.

#### Approve Savings Plan

Always vote **for** a management proposal to adopt a savings plan.

#### Approve Option/Stock Awards

Vote **against if** the option/stock award is priced less than **80%** of the fair market value on the grant date.

Vote **against if** the award is time-lapsing stock that fully vest in less than **3** years.

Vote **against if** the option is not premium-priced or indexed, or does not vest based on future performance.

#### Other Management Proposals

##### Ratify Selection of Auditors

Generally, vote **against if** the non-audit, non-tax services (i.e., "other fees") exceed **25%** of total fees.

Generally, vote **against if** the auditing firm is not subject to PCAOB oversight.

#### Approve Employment Agreements

Generally, vote **for** a management proposal to approve an employment agreement or contract.

#### Approve Non-Technical Charter Amendments

Generally, vote **against if** an amendment would have the effect of reducing shareholders' rights.

#### Approve Non-Technical Bylaw Amendments

Generally, vote **against if** an amendment would have the effect of reducing shareholders' rights.

### **PART 2: SHAREHOLDER PROPOSALS**

#### **Board of Directors and Governance**

##### Adopt Confidential Voting

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal asking the board to adopt confidential voting and independent tabulation of the proxy ballots.

##### Counting Shareholder Votes

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal asking the company to refrain from counting abstentions and broker non- votes in vote tabulations.

##### No Discretionary Voting

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to eliminate the company's discretion to vote unmarked proxy ballots.

##### Equal Access to the Proxy

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to provide equal access to the proxy materials for shareholders.

##### Improve Meeting Reports

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to improve annual meeting reports.

##### Board Inclusiveness

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal asking the board to include more women and minorities as directors.

##### Increase Board Independence

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal seeking to increase board independence.

##### Minimum Stock Ownership by Directors

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to require minimum stock ownership by directors.

##### Allow Union/Employee Representatives on the Board

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that seeks to provide for union or employee representatives on the board of directors.

## Directors' Role in Corporate Strategy

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal seeking to increase disclosure regarding the board's role in the development and monitoring of the company's long-term strategic plan.

## Increase Nominating Committee Independence

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to increase the independence of the nominating committee.

## Increase Compensation Committee Independence

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to increase the independence of the compensation committee.

## Increase Audit Committee Independence

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to increase the independence of the audit committee.

## Increase Key Committee Independence

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to increase the independence of key committees.

## Create Nominating Committee

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal to create a nominating committee of the board.

## Create Shareholder Committee

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal urging the creation of a shareholder committee.

## Independent Board Chairman

Generally, vote with management recommendations, **except** in cases where there is not an independent lead director and the Chairman is an insider.

## ***In cases where there is not an independent lead director***

### Lead Director

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal asking that a lead director be chosen from among the ranks of non-employee directors.

### Adopt Cumulative Voting

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal calling for the adoption of cumulative voting.

### Require Nominee Statement in Proxy

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to require directors to place a statement of candidacy in the proxy statement.

### Double Board Nominees

Shareholder proposals to nominate two director candidates for each open board seat require specific analysis on a case-by-case basis

## Director Liability

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal to make directors liable for acts or omissions that constitute a breach of fiduciary care resulting from a director's gross negligence and/or reckless or willful neglect.

## Repeal Classified Board

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to repeal a classified board, however careful analysis is critical in hostile takeover situations.

## Lower Threshold for Special Meeting

Generally, vote **against** a shareholder proposal that lowers the ownership threshold required to call a special meeting.

## Proxy Access Amendments

Generally, vote **against** a shareholder proposal to increase shareholder proxy access, which typically increase the number of shareholder-nominated candidates for the Board.

## **Auditors**

### Shareholder Approval of Auditors

Always vote **for** a shareholder proposal calling for stockholder ratification of auditors.

### Auditors Must Attend Annual Meeting

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal calling for the auditors to attend the annual meeting.

### Limit Consulting by Auditors

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal calling for limiting consulting by auditors.

## **Takeover Defense Activity**

### Redeem or Vote on Poison Pill

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal asking the board to redeem or to allow shareholders to vote on a poison pill shareholder rights plan.

### Eliminate Supermajority Provision

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that seeks to eliminate supermajority provisions.

### Reduce Supermajority Provision

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that seeks to reduce supermajority provisions.

### Restore Right to Call a Special Meeting

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to restore shareholders' right to call a special meeting.

#### Restore Right to Act by Written Consent

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to restore shareholders' right to act by written consent.

#### Instituting Right to Act by Written Consent

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to institute shareholders' right to act by written consent.

#### Prohibit Targeted Share Placement

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to limit the board's discretion to issue targeted share placements or to require shareholder approval before such block placements can be made.

#### Opt Out of State Takeover Statute

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal seeking to force the company to opt out of a state takeover statutory provision.

#### Reincorporation

Generally, vote **against if** the new state has stronger anti-takeover provisions.

#### Adopt Anti-Greenmail Provision

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to limit greenmail payments.

### **Compensation & Incentive Plans**

#### Restrict Executive Compensation

Generally, vote **against if** the proposal limits executive pay without linking compensation to financial performance.

#### Disclose Executive Compensation

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to enhance the disclosure of executive compensation.

#### Restrict Director Compensation

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to restrict director compensation.

#### Pay Directors in Stock

Generally, vote **against if** the resolution would require directors to receive their entire compensation in the form of company stock.

#### Approve Executive Compensation

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal calling for shareholder votes on executive pay.

#### Restrict Director Pensions

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal calling for the termination of director retirement plans.



#### Review/Report on/Link Executive Pay to Social Performance

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to review, report on and/or link executive compensation to non-financial criteria, particularly social criteria.

#### No Repricing of Underwater Options

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal seeking shareholder approval to reprice or replace underwater stock options.

#### Golden Parachutes

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal calling for a ban on excessive golden parachutes.

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal calling for a shareholder vote on future golden parachutes.

#### Award Performance-Based Stock Options

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal seeking to award performance-based stock options.

#### Expense Stock Options

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal establishing a policy of expensing the costs of all future stock options issued by the company in the company's annual income statement.

#### Create Compensation Committee

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal to create a compensation committee.

#### Hire Independent Compensation Consultant

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to require that the compensation committee hire its own independent compensation consultants—separate from the compensation consultants working with corporate management—to assist with executive compensation issues.

### **Corporate Influence**

#### Review Charitable Giving Policy

Vote **against if** the company has a well-managed program or the proposal will be unduly burdensome.

#### Review Political Spending

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to increase disclosure of political spending and activities.

#### Disclose Prior Government Service

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal requesting disclosure of company executives' prior government service.

## **Environmental Issues**

### Review Energy Efficiency & Renewables

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to review its reliance on nuclear and fossil fuels, its development or use of solar and wind power, or its energy efficiency.

### Endorse Ceres Principles and UN Sustainable Development Goals

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to endorse the Ceres principles or UN Sustainable Development Goals.

### Control Generation of Pollutants

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to control generation of pollutant(s).

### Report on Environmental Impact or Plans

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to report on its environmental impact or plans.

### Report or Take Action on Climate Change

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to report or take action on climate change.

### Review Genetic Engineering

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to report on or label bioengineered products.

### Preserve/Report on Natural Habitat

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to preserve natural habitat.

### Report on Sustainability

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal requesting reports on sustainability.

## **Human Rights, Labor, & Social Issues**

### Develop/Report on Human Rights Policy

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to develop or report on human rights policies.

### Review Operations' Impact on Local Groups

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to review its operations' impact on local groups.

### China-No Use of Forced Labor

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to certify that company operations are free of forced labor.

## China-Adopt Code of Conduct

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to implement and/or increase activity on each of the principles of the U.S. Business Principles for Human Rights of Workers in China.

## Report on EEOP

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to report on the company's affirmative action policies and programs, including releasing its EEO-1 forms and providing statistical data on specific positions within the company.

## Drop Sexual Orientation from EEOP

Vote **against** a shareholder proposal that asks management to drop sexual orientation from EEO policy.

## Adopt Sexual Orientation Anti-Bias Policy

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to adopt a sexual orientation non-discrimination policy.

## Review Foreign Work Force Conditions

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to report on or review foreign operations.

## Adopt Standards for Foreign Operations

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to adopt standards for Mexican operations.

## Review or Implement MacBride Principles

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to review or implement the MacBride principles.

## Urge MacBride on Contractor/Franchisee

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to encourage its contractors and franchisees to implement the MacBride principles.

## Review Global Labor Practices

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to report on or review its global labor practices or those of their contractors.

## Monitor/Adopt ILO Conventions

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to adopt, implement or enforce a global workplace code of conduct based on the International Labor Organization's (ILO) core labor conventions.

## **Military Involvement**

### Review Foreign Military Sales

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to report on the company's foreign military sales or foreign offset activities.

## Review Military Contracting Criteria

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to develop social, economic and ethical criteria that the company could use to determine the acceptability of military contracts and to govern the execution of the contracts.

## Other Shareholder Proposals

### Review Developing Country Debt

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal asking the company to review its developing country debt and lending criteria and to report to shareholders on its findings.

### Review Social Impact of Financial Ventures

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that requests a company to assess the environmental, public health, human rights, labor rights or other socioeconomic impacts of its credit decisions.

### Review Fair Lending Policy

Vote **for** a shareholder proposal requesting reports and/or reviews of plans and/or policies on fair lending practices.

### Review Plant Closings

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to establish committees to consider issues related to facilities closure and relocation of work.

### Review or Promote Animal Welfare

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks management to review or promote animal welfare.

### Review Drug Pricing or Distribution

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal that asks the company to report or take action on pharmaceutical drug pricing or distribution.

### Restore Preemptive Rights

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal to restore preemptive rights.

### Study Sale or Spin-Off

Generally, vote **for** a shareholder proposal asking the company to study sales, spin-offs, or other strategic alternatives.

## **UNIPLAN PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

---

### **PROXY VOTING POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

Uniplan maintains a proxy voting policy and corresponding procedures. Uniplan may from time to time retain a third-party company to provide research, record keeping, or other assistance with voting client proxies. All of which are set forth at Section 12 of this Compliance Manual (Proxy Voting Policy and Procedures)

#### **1.1 Sub-Advisers**

Uniplan may delegate some or all of its investment advisory functions over a particular client account or accounts to another investment adviser (called a sub-adviser). Prior to delegating advisory functions, Uniplan will perform due diligence on the sub-adviser, enter into a sub-advisory contract with the sub-adviser, and supervise the advisory and other services provided by the sub-adviser.

#### **1.2 Form ADV Disclosure and Other Disclosures Pertaining to Investment Management Procedures**

##### **1.2.1 Conflicts of Interest**

Generally, conflicts of interest can be addressed by disclosure and/or client consent. If an Adviser Representative on behalf of Uniplan enters into a transaction or arrangement that raises a potential conflict of interest, the Adviser Representative will make a full and frank disclosure of such conflict. The Adviser Representative will inform the Chief Compliance Officer about this conflict, and the Chief Compliance Officer will ensure that such disclosure is in Uniplan's Brochure (Part 2A), and, depending on the nature of the conflict, will consider making such disclosure in a separate written document sent to the client. In addition, it also may be prudent for Uniplan to obtain written client consent for certain conflicts of interest.

##### **1.2.2 Proxy Voting Disclosures**

Uniplan shall, on an annual basis, provide clients with a concise summary of Uniplan's proxy voting process, and upon request, to provide clients with a copy of its Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures, and state how they can obtain information from Uniplan regarding how their securities were voted.

##### **1.2.3 Manner of Disclosure**

Uniplan may make such disclosure available in the following manner:

1. send the disclosure to the clients together with a periodic account statement;
2. send the disclosure to the clients by mail or electronically, or
3. include the disclosure in Uniplan's Brochure (Part 2A) (if this option is selected, Uniplan must deliver (not merely offer) the revised Brochure to new clients or a summary of material changes to existing clients within 180 days after publication and should accompany the delivery with a cover letter.)

## **2 PROXY VOTING**

### **2.1 Proxy Voting Responsibility**

At the inception of each investment adviser-client relationship, Uniplan requires the client to indicate in writing whether we or the client is responsible for voting proxies. If Uniplan is responsible for proxy voting as part of our service, we seek to submit these votes in the best interests of the client and follow the provisions of applicable SEC rules in connection with voting client securities.

## **2.2 Retaining Third Party Proxy Advisory Firms**

Uniplan may retain a third-party company (“Third Party Proxy Advisory Firm”) to provide research, record keeping, or other assistance with voting client proxies. Uniplan will remain in control of the proxy voting and has established guidelines with the third-party company. Uniplan utilizes Institutional Shareholder Services (ISS) as their third-party provider of proxy services.

The following will be considered when determining a third-party company:

- Obtains and reviews the proxy voting policies and procedures of the third-party company (or summaries of such policies and procedures), and finds them acceptable and in the best interests of its clients;
- Determines that the third-party company has the capacity and competency to analyze proxy issues by determining the following:
  - The adequacy and quality of the proxy advisory firm’s staffing and personnel
- Obtains sufficient information from the third-party company Advisory initially and on an ongoing basis to conclude that the third-party company Advisory is independent and can make recommendations in an impartial manner;
- Notwithstanding the qualifications of the Proxy Advisory, Uniplan may choose to vote the proxy in a manner it deems in the best interest of shareholders even if this is contrary to the opinion of the Proxy Service.
- The robustness of its policies and procedures regarding its ability to (i) ensure that its proxy voting recommendations are based on current and accurate information and (ii) identify and address any conflicts of interest and any other considerations that Uniplan believes would be appropriate in considering the nature and quality of the services provided by the proxy advisory firm

## **2.3 Third-Party Proxy Advisory Firm Voting**

Uniplan subscribes to Institutional Shareholder Services Inc. (“ISS) a third-party corporate governance research service and proxy voting service. The client shall direct the Custodian to forward all proxies to ISS on behalf of Uniplan. Physical ballots received via US Postal Service will be logged by Uniplan and sent electronically to ISS. ISS will incorporate the ballot into Uniplan’s standard procedures as indicated below.

Uniplan’s obligation to vote proxies shall be conditioned upon (a) receipt of proxies from Custodian and/or Client in a timely manner; and (b) absence of any legal encumbrance to such voting, including a security interest with respect to the subject security, a securities lending or other similar program or restriction.

### **2.3.1 Proxy Voting Review**

The CCO or Compliance Associate will review to assure that votes casted on behalf of clients are consistent with Uniplan’s voting policies and are in the client’s best interest by

- Review sample of “pre-populated” votes on ISS’ voting platform before such votes are cast to assure they are set to vote according to Uniplan’s Policy;
- Review votes on ISS after they have been cast to assure they were voted according to Uniplan’s policy.
- Review ballots on ISS to determine if proposals may require a higher degree of analysis;
  - Such ballots along with notes from ISS, are sent to the appropriate Portfolio Manager(s) and Analyst(s) for their direction.

- Such ballots are documented on a “Disagreement Tracker”
  - Such ballots on the “Disagreement Tracker” are reviewed by the CCO before such votes are cast, to assure that the vote agrees with the Portfolio Manager and/or Analyst’s direction.
- Sampling proxy ballots to reconcile that ISS actually receives proxies from issuers of securities owned by Uniplan clients.

### **2.3.2 Universal Proxy Card**

Uniplan recognizes that the proxy process is the primary means for its clients to become informed. When presented with a universal proxy card, Uniplan will send such cards to the appropriate Portfolio Manager(s) and Analyst(s) for their direction.

## **2.4 Corporate Governance**

It is Uniplan’s general policy, after taking into account all pertinent facts, to vote proxies in favor of management proposals and/or recommendations. Our policy is also to generally vote all proxies for the same issue the same way for all clients.

Uniplan does not advise or act for the client in legal proceedings, including class actions, with respect to securities purchased for clients and/or held in the client’s account.

## **2.5 How to Obtain Voting Information**

Uniplan’s proxy voting policies and procedures are available in Uniplan’s Form ADV 2A. A client can make a request, at any time, for a proxy vote and/or proxy voting policies and procedures. Requests can be made to Mary Beth Jacobson by calling her at (262) 534-3000 or emailing her at [mjacobson@uniplanic.com](mailto:mjacobson@uniplanic.com)

In response to any request, the Chief Compliance Officer will have a written response sent to the client with the information requested, and as applicable will include the name of the issuer, the proposal voted upon, and how Uniplan voted the client’s proxy with respect to each proposal about which client inquired.

## **2.6 Books and Records**

Uniplan will maintain its Proxy books and records:

- Investment Management Agreement indicating who votes proxies.
- A copy of each proxy ballot that Uniplan receives. Alternatively, electronic records from the third-party proxy service.
  - A log of proxy ballots that Uniplan receives via US Postal Service.
  - A record of each vote cast by Uniplan. Uniplan will rely on the third-party proxy service where these records are kept and maintained.
  - A copy of each request for information on how Uniplan voted proxies on behalf of the client and a copy of any response by Uniplan.
- A “Disagreement Log” to track disagreements and universal cards.